

Simultaneous Dual-Band Wireless N Media Router

User's Guide

2 2 vXEL		

Default Log	in Details
LAN IP Address	http://192.168.1.1
Password	1234

Firmware Version 1.0 Edition 1, 04/2012



www.zyxel.com

Copyright © 2012 ZyXEL Communications Corporation

IMPORTANT!

READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE.

KEEP THIS GUIDE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

Graphics in this book may differ slightly from the product due to differences in operating systems, operating system versions, or if you installed updated firmware/software for your device. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate.

Related Documentation

• Quick Start Guide

The Quick Start Guide is designed to help you get your NBG5715 up and running right away. It contains information on setting up your network and configuring for Internet access.

Contents Overview

User's Guide	13
Introduction	15
The WPS Button	21
ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility	23
Introducing the Web Configurator	29
Monitor and Summary	33
NBG5715 Modes	
Easy Mode	41
Router Mode	51
Tutorials	57
Technical Reference	65
WAN	67
Wireless LAN	75
LAN	91
DHCP Server	95
NAT	99
Dynamic DNS	109
Static Route	111
Firewall	
IPSec VPN	121
Bandwidth Management	143
Remote Management	149
Universal Plug-and-Play (UPnP)	153
Maintenance	
Troubleshooting	167

Table of Contents

Contents Overview	3
Table of Contents	5
Part I: User's Guide	
Chapter 1 Introduction	15
1.1 Overview	15
1.2 Applications	16
1.3 Ways to Manage the NBG5715	
1.4 Good Habits for Managing the NBG5715	
1.5 LEDs	17
1.6 Wall Mounting	19
Chapter 2 The WPS Button	21
2.1 Overview	21
Chapter 3 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility	23
3.1 Overview	23
3.1.1 Quick Setup	
3.1.2 Installing ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility	
3.2 The ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility	
3.2.1 The Menus	
3.2.2 The Share Center Configuration Window	
3.2.3 The Auto-Connect Printer List Window	
3.3 Manually Connecting to USB Devices	
3.4 Automatically Connecting to a USB Printer	
Chapter 4 Introducing the Web Configurator	29
4.1 Overview	
4.2 Accessing the Web Configurator	
4.2.1 Login Screen	
4.2.2 Weather Edit	
4.2.3 Time/Date Edit	

4.3 Resetting the NBG5715	
4.3.1 How to Use the RESET Button	31
Chapter 5	
Monitor and Summary	
5.1 Overview	
5.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter	
5.3 The Log Screen	
5.3.1 View Log	
5.4 DHCP Table	
5.5 Packet Statistics	35
5.6 VPN Monitor	36
5.7 WLAN_2.4G/5G Station Status	37
Chapter 6	
NBG5715 Modes	39
6.1 Overview	30
6.1.1 Web Configurator Modes	
, and the second s	
Chapter 7	
Easy Mode	
7.1 Overview	41
7.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter	42
7.3 Navigation Panel	42
7.4 Network Map	43
7.5 Control Panel	
7.5.1 Game Engine	44
7.5.2 Power Saving	
7.5.3 Content Filter	
7.5.4 Bandwidth MGMT	
7.5.5 Firewall	
7.5.6 Wireless Security	
7.5.7 WPS	
7.6 Status Screen in Easy Mode	
Chapter 8 Router Mode	51
8.1 Overview	
8.2 Router Mode Status Screen	
8.2.1 Navigation Panel	54
Chapter 9	
Tutorials	57

9.1 Overview	57
9.2 Set Up a Wireless Network with WPS	57
9.2.1 Push Button Configuration (PBC)	
9.2.2 PIN Configuration	
9.3 Configure Wireless Security without WPS	60
9.3.1 Configure Your Notebook	61

Part II: Technical Reference	65
------------------------------	----

Chapter 10 WAN

VA	Ň	67
	10.1 Overview	67
	10.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter	67
	10.3 What You Need To Know	67
	10.3.1 Configuring Your Internet Connection	67
	10.3.2 Multicast	69
	10.4 The Broadband Screen	69
	10.4.1 Ethernet Encapsulation	69
	10.4.2 PPPoE Encapsulation	71
	10.5 The Advanced Screen	

Chapter 11 Wireless LA

ess LAN	
11.1 Overview	
11.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	
11.1.2 What You Should Know	
11.2 The General Wireless LAN Screen	
11.3 Wireless Security Modes	
11.3.1 No Security	
11.3.2 WEP Encryption	
11.3.3 WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK	
11.3.4 WPA/WPA2	
11.4 The MAC Filter Screen	
11.5 The Wireless LAN Advanced Screen	
11.6 The QoS Screen	
11.7 The WPS Screen	
11.8 The WPS Station Screen	
11.9 The Scheduling Screen	

.AN	l	91

12.1 Overview	91
12.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter	91
12.3 What You Need To Know	91
12.3.1 IP Pool Setup	92
12.3.2 LAN TCP/IP	92
12.4 The LAN IP Screen	92
12.5 The IP Alias Screen	93
Chapter 13	
DHCP Server	95
13.1 Overview	05
13.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	
13.1.2 What You Need To Know	
13.2 The DHCP Server General Screen	
13.3 The DHCP Server Advanced Screen	
13.4 The Client List Screen	
Chapter 14 NAT	
NAI	
14.1 Overview	
14.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	
14.1.2 What You Need To Know	100
14.2 The NAT General Screen	101
14.3 The Port Forwarding Screen	
14.3.1 Port Forwarding Edit Screen	104
14.4 The NAT Advance Screen	105
14.5 Technical Reference	106
14.5.1 NATPort Forwarding: Services and Port Numbers	106
14.5.2 NAT Port Forwarding Example	106
14.5.3 Trigger Port Forwarding	107
14.5.4 Trigger Port Forwarding Example	
14.5.5 Two Points To Remember About Trigger Ports	108
Chapter 15	
Dynamic DNS	
	400
15.1 Overview	
15.1.1 What You Need To Know	
15.2 The Dynamic DNS Screen	109
Chapter 16	
Static Route	111
16.1 Overview	111
16.2 The Static Route Screen	

16.2.1 Add/Edit Static Route	
Chapter 17	
Firewall	
17.1 Overview	
17.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter	
17.1.2 What You Need To Know	
17.2 The Firewall General Screen	
17.3 The Firewall Services Screen	
Chapter 18	
IPSec VPN	
18.1 Overview	
18.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter	
18.3 What You Need To Know	
18.3.1 IKE SA (IKE Phase 1) Overview	
18.3.2 IPSec SA (IKE Phase 2) Overview	
18.4 The General Screen	
18.5 Edit VPN Rule	
18.5.1 IKEKey Setup	
18.5.2 Manual Key Setup	
18.5.3 Configuring Manual Key	
18.6 The SA Monitor Screen	
18.7 Technical Reference	
18.7.1 IPSec Architecture	
18.7.2 Encapsulation	
18.7.3 IKE Phases	
18.7.4 Negotiation Mode	
18.7.5 IPSec and NAT	
18.7.6 VPN, NAT, and NAT Traversal	
18.7.7 ID Type and Content	
18.7.8 Pre-Shared Key	
18.7.9 Diffie-Hellman (DH) Key Groups	
Chapter 19	
Bandwidth Management	
19.1 Overview	
19.2 What You Can Do this Chapter	
19.3 What You Need To Know	
19.4 General Screen	
19.5 Advance Screen	
19.5.1 Rule Configuration: User Defined Service Rule Configuratio	n146

Chapter 20 Remote Management	140
Remote Management	
20.1 Overview	149
20.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter	149
20.3 What You Need to Know	149
20.3.1 Remote Management and NAT	
20.3.2 System Timeout	
20.4 WWW Screen	
20.5 Telnet Screen	150
Chapter 21	
Universal Plug-and-Play (UPnP)	153

versal Plug-and-Play (UPnP)	153
21.1 Overview	153
21.2 What You Need to Know	153
21.2.1 NAT Traversal	153
21.2.2 Cautions with UPnP	153
21.3 UPnP Screen	154
21.4 Technical Reference	154
21.4.1 Using UPnP in Windows XP Example	154
21.4.2 Web Configurator Easy Access	156

Chapter 22

Maintenance	
22.1 Overview	159
22.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter	159
22.3 General Screen	159
22.4 Password Screen	
22.5 Time Setting Screen	161
22.6 Firmware Upgrade Screen	
22.7 Backup/Restore Screen	163
22.8 The Language Screen	

Chapter 23 Troubleshootin

bubleshooting	
23.1 Overview	
23.2 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs	
23.3 NBG5715 Access and Login	
23.4 Internet Access	
23.5 Resetting the NBG5715 to Its Factory Defaults	
23.6 Wireless Router Troubleshooting	
23.7 USB Device Problems	
23.8 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Problems	

Appendix	A	Pop-up Windows, JavaScript and Java Permissions	175
Appendix	В	IP Addresses and Subnetting	185
Appendix	С	Setting Up Your Computer's IP Address	195
Appendix	D	Wireless LANs	223
Appendix	Е	Common Services	237
Appendix	F	Legal Information	241
Index			247

PART I User's Guide

Introduction

1.1 Overview

This chapter introduces the main features and applications of the NBG5715.

The NBG5715 extends the range of your existing wired network without additional wiring, providing easy network access to mobile users. You can set up a wireless network with other IEEE 802.11a/b/ g/n compatible devices. The NBG5715 is able to function both 2.4G and 5G network at the same time.

A range of services such as a firewall and content filtering are also available for secure Internet computing. You can use media bandwidth management to efficiently manage traffic on your network. Bandwidth management features allow you to prioritize time-sensitive or highly important applications such as Voice over the Internet (VoIP).

There are two USB 2.0 ports on the side panel of your NBG5715. You can connect USB (version 2.0 or lower) memory sticks, USB hard drives, or USB devices for file sharing. The NBG5715 automatically detects the USB devices.

Two USB eject buttons are located above the USB ports. Push the eject button of the corresponding USB port for 2 seconds. Make sure the USB LED is off before removing your USB device. This will remove your USB device safely, preventing file or data loss if it is being transmitted through the USB device.

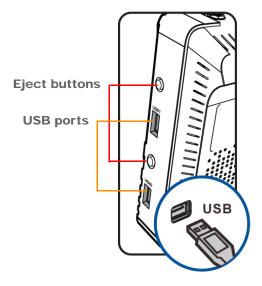


Figure 1 USB Ports and Eject Buttons

- Note: For the USB function, it is strongly recommended to use version 2.0 or lower USB storage devices (such as memory sticks, USB hard drives) and/or USB devices (such as USB printers). Other USB products are not guaranteed to function properly with the NBG5715.
- Note: Be sure to install the ZyXEL NetUSBTM Share Center Utility (for NetUSB functionality) from the included disc, or download the latest version from the zyxel.com website. See Chapter 3 on page 23 for more information.

1.2 Applications

Your can create the following networks using the NBG5715:

- Wired. You can connect network devices via the Ethernet ports of the NBG5715 so that they can communicate with each other and access the Internet.
- Wireless. Wireless clients can connect to the NBG5715 to access network resources.
- WAN. Connect to a broadband modem/router for Internet access.
- WPS. Create an instant network connection with another WPS-compatible device, sharing your network connection with it.
- NetUSB. The NBG5715 allows you to connect a USB device (such as printer, scanner, or portable hard disk) directly to the USB port and then share that device over the Internet. You can also connect a USB to the NBG5715, which can then share up to 3 additional USB devices with the rest of your personal home network.

1.3 Ways to Manage the NBG5715

Use any of the following methods to manage the NBG5715.

- WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup). You can use the WPS button or the WPS section of the Web Configurator to set up a wireless network with your NBG5715.
- Web Configurator. This is recommended for everyday management of the NBG5715 using a (supported) web browser.

1.4 Good Habits for Managing the NBG5715

Do the following things regularly to make the NBG5715 more secure and to manage the NBG5715 more effectively.

- Change the password. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.
- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.

• Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the NBG5715 to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you would not have to totally re-configure the NBG5715. You could simply restore your last configuration.

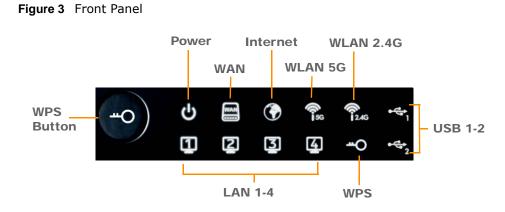
1.5 LEDs

Look at the LED lights on the front panel to determine the status of the NBG5715. Use the **LED** button at the side panel of the device to turn the LED lights on or off. If you have already pushed the **LED** button to the **ON** position but none of the LEDS are on, make sure the NBG5715 is receiving power and the power is turned on.

Note: The **Power** LED will be on even if you push the **LED** button to the **OFF** position. This is for you to determine whether the NBG5715 is powered on.

Figure 2 LED Button





The following table describes the LEDs and the WPS button.

 Table 1
 Front panel LEDs and WPS button

LED	STATUS	DESCRIPTION			
WPS Button	with anothe 120 second	utton for 1 second to set up a wireless connection via WiFi Protected Setup r WPS-enabled client. You must press the WPS button on the client side within of a successful connection. See Chapter 2 on page 21 and Chapter 9 on more information on WPS.			
Power	On	The NBG5715 is receiving power and functioning properly.			
	Off	The NBG5715 is not receiving power.			
WAN	On	The NBG5715's WAN connection is ready.			
	Blinking	The NBG5715 is sending/receiving data through the WAN with a 1000Mbps transmission rate.			
	Off	The WAN connection is not ready, or has failed.			
Internet	On	The NBG5715 has an IP connection but no traffic.			
		Your device has a WAN IP address (either static or assigned by a DHCP server), PPP negotiation was successfully completed (if used) and the connection is up.			
	Blinking	The NBG5715 is sending or receiving IP traffic.			
	Off	The NBG5715 does not have an IP connection.			
WLAN 2.4/5G	On	The NBG5715 is ready, but is not sending/receiving data through the 5G wireless LAN.			
	Blinking	The NBG5715 is sending/receiving data through the 5G wireless LAN.			
		The NBG5715 is negotiating a WPS connection with a wireless client.			
	Off	The wireless LAN is not ready or has failed.			
LAN 1-4	On	The NBG5715's LAN connection is ready.			
	Blinking	The NBG5715 is sending/receiving data through the LAN with a 1000Mbps transmission rate.			
	Off	The LAN connection is not ready, or has failed.			
USB 1-2	On	The NBG5715 has a USB device installed.			
Blinking The NBG5715 is transmitting and/or receiving data installed USB device.		The NBG5715 is transmitting and/or receiving data from routers through an installed USB device.			
	Off	There is no USB device connected to the NBG5715.			

1.6 Wall Mounting

You may need screw anchors if mounting on a concrete or brick wall.

Table 2 Wall Mounting Information			
Distance between holes	12.7 cm		
M4 Screws	Тwo		
Screw anchors (optional)	Тwo		

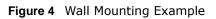
- 1 Select a position free of obstructions on a wall strong enough to hold the weight of the device.
- 2 Mark two holes on the wall at the appropriate distance apart for the screws.

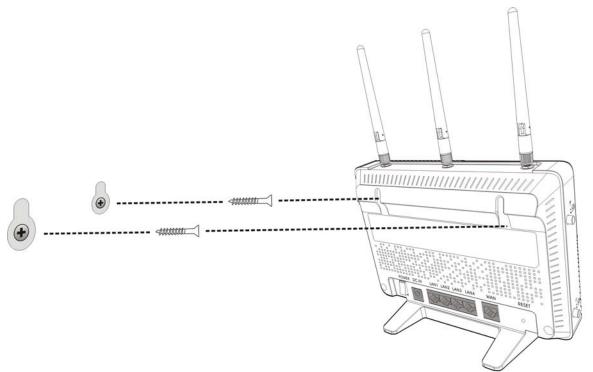
Be careful to avoid damaging pipes or cables located inside the wall when drilling holes for the screws.

3 If using screw anchors, drill two holes for the screw anchors into the wall. Push the anchors into the full depth of the holes, then insert the screws into the anchors. Do not insert the screws all the way in - leave a small gap of about 0.5 cm.

If not using screw anchors, use a screwdriver to insert the screws into the wall. Do not insert the screws all the way in - leave a gap of about 0.5 cm.

- 4 Make sure the screws are fastened well enough to hold the weight of the NBG5715 with the connection cables.
- 5 Align the holes on the back of the NBG5715 with the screws on the wall. Hang the NBG5715 on the screws.





The WPS Button

2.1 Overview

Your NBG5715 supports WiFi Protected Setup (WPS), which is an easy way to set up a secure wireless network. WPS is an industry standard specification, defined by the WiFi Alliance.

WPS allows you to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually. Each WPS connection works between two devices. Both devices must support WPS (check each device's documentation to make sure).

Depending on the devices you have, you can either press a button (on the device itself, or in its configuration utility) or enter a PIN (a unique Personal Identification Number that allows one device to authenticate the other) in each of the two devices. When WPS is activated on a device, it has two minutes to find another device that also has WPS activated. Then, the two devices connect and set up a secure network by themselves.

For more information on using WPS, see Chapter 9 on page 57.



Figure 5 The WPS Button

ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility

3.1 Overview

The ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility allows you to work with the USB devices that are connected directly to the NBG5715 as if they are connected directly to your computer. This allows you to easily share USB-based devices such as printers, scanners, portable hard disks, MP3 players, faxes, and digital cameras (to name a few) with all the other people in your home or office as long as they are connected to the NBG5715 and have the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility installed.

Note: Be sure to install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility (for NetUSB functionality) from the included disc, or download the latest version from the zyxel.com website's Download Library.

3.1.1 Quick Setup

This section shows you how to get started using the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility.

- 1 Install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility on each computer connected to the NBG5715.
- 2 Connect a USB device to the USB port on the NBG5715.

Note: If you are connecting multiple devices to the NBG5715, first connect a USB hub to the NBG5715 then connect your other USB devices to it.

3 Run the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility to display a list of all connected USB devices, then use it to connect your computer to them.

3.1.2 Installing ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility

Before you can access USB devices connected to the NBG5715, you must first install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility on any computer on your LAN to which you want to allow access to these devices.

Note: In order to properly use the utility with your NBG5715, ensure that the NBG5715 firmware is version v1.00(BWQ.0) or higher. See Chapter 22 on page 162 for information on updating your device's firmware.

To install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility:

- 1 Insert the disc that came with your NBG5715 into your computer's disc drive.
- 2 Run the **Setup** program by double-clicking it and then follow the on-screen instructions for installing it on your computer.

Note: The following operating systems are supported: Windows XP/Vista/7 (32 and 64-bit versions).

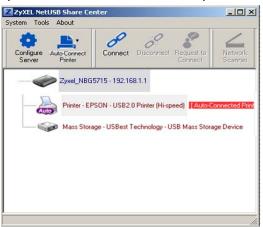
3 To open the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility, double-click its system tray icon.



3.2 The ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility

This section describes the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility main window.

Figure 6 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Main Window



The following table describes the icons in this window.

Table 3	ZyXEL	NetUSB	Share	Center	Utility	Main	Window	Icons
---------	-------	--------	-------	--------	---------	------	--------	-------

ICON	DESCRIPTION		
-	Configure Server		
-	Click to open the NBG5715's built-in Web Configurator, which you can use to set up the NBG5715 (see Chapter 4 on page 29 for details).		
	Auto-Connect Printer		
, 11 , 11	Click this if you want to automatically connect to the printer each time your start your computer.		
	Note: You must first install the appropriate print driver on each computer for which you intend to use this feature. See the documentation that came with your printer for instructions on how to do this.		
•	Connect		
op	Select a USB device and then click this button to connect to it. Your computer can connect to as many USB devices as are connected to the NBG5715.		
-0	Disconnect		
0	Select a device to which your computer is connected and then click this button to disconnect from it.		

ICON	DESCRIPTION	
8	Request to Connect Some USB devices may not allow automatic connections over the network. If so, select the device in question and click this button to issue a request to connect to it.	
4	Network Scanner Click this to open the scanner options on your computer for working with a scanner connected to the network.	

 Table 3
 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Main Window Icons (continued)

3.2.1 The Menus

This section describes the utility's menus.



The following table describes the menus in this screen.

MENU	ITEM	DESCRIPTION
System	Exit	This closes the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility.
Tools	Configuration	This opens the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility configuration window.
	Auto-Connect Printer List	This opens the list window that displays all of the printing devices connected to the NBG5715.
Help	About	This opens the about window, which provides information of the utility software and driver versions.
Auto-Connect Printer	Set Auto-Connect Printer	 This sets the selected printer to 'auto- connect', meaning your computer will always connect to the printer over the network. Note: You first must install the appropriate drivers for the printer that you intend
		to use.
	Delete Auto-Connect Printer	This removes the auto-connect option from the selected printer.

 Table 4
 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Main Screen Menus

3.2.2 The Share Center Configuration Window

This section describes the utility's configuration window, which allows you to set certain options for the utility. These options do not apply to the USB devices connected to the NBG5715.

You can open it by clicking the **Tools** > **Configuration** menu command.

Figure 8 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Configuration Window

anguage English Chinese Traditional Deutsch Francais Italiano	automaticallu e	xecute when loggin	a on windows
English Chinese Traditional Deutsch Francais Italiano			
Deutsch Francais Italiano	anguage English		
Italiano		al	
Espanol	Francais Italiano		
	Espanol		

The following table describes the labels in this window.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Basic	Select this to run the utility automatically when you log into or start up Windows.
Language	Select a language for the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility. You must restart the utility for the change to take effect.
ОК	Click this to save your changes and close the window.
Cancel	Click this cancel to close the window without saving.
Apply	Click this to save your changes without closing the window.

Table 5 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Configuration Window

3.2.3 The Auto-Connect Printer List Window

This section describes the utility's auto-connect printer list window. You can open it by clicking the **Tools > Auto-Connect Printer List** menu command.

Figure 9 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Auto-Connect Printer List Window

ierver IP & Printer Name	Windows Printer Name

Table 6 ZyXEL NetUSB	Share Center Utility Auto-Connect Printer List Window
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server IP & Printer Name	Displays a list of print server IPs and printer names connected to this NBG5715.
Windows Printer Name	Displays a corresponding list of Windows printer names connected to this devices listed in the other list.
Delete	Select an printer from the list and click this to remove it.
Close	Click this to close the window.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

3.3 Manually Connecting to USB Devices

This example shows you how to connect to a USB device over your NBG5715 network. Makes sure that you have first installed the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility on the computer to which you want to connect the USB devices.

Note: If you do this with a USB printer but do not yet have the print driver installed you will be prompted to install one by the Windows New Hardware Wizard.

- Connect a USB device to the NBG5715. 1
- 2 In the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility, select the device and click Connect.



3 The device mounts on your system.

Edit View Favorites Too					
Back * 🜍 • 🏂 🔎	Search 6 Folders	Folder Sync			
ess 😼 My Computer					
	Name	Туре	Total Size	Free Space	Comments
ystem Tasks 📀	Files Stored on T	nis Computer			
View system information Add or remove programs Change a setting	Shared Documents	File Folder			
	SyxEL (C:)	Local Disk	37.2 GB	26.1 GB	
ther Places 🛞		Local Disk	37.2 GB	34.9 GB	
My Network Places	Devices with Ren	novable Storage			
My Documents Shared Documents Control Panel	CD Drive (E:)	31/5-Inch Floppy Disk CD Drive Removable Disk	-		
	Network Drives				
etails	XTW-Sharing on 'n.	. Network Drive	31.2 GB	6.96 GB	

3.4 Automatically Connecting to a USB Printer

This example shows you how to set your computer to automatically connect to a shared USB printer over your NBG5715 network each time you log into your computer. Makes sure that you have first installed the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility.

- 1 Connect a USB printer to the NBG5715.
- 2 Open the **ZyXEL NetUSB Sharing Center Utility** on the computer that you want to use to connect to the printer.



Click the **Connect** button. You may be prompted to install a printer driver or to configure other settings.

3 Finally, click the **Auto-Connect Printer** menu and select **Set Auto-Connect Printer** from the menu.

4

Introducing the Web Configurator

4.1 Overview

This chapter describes how to access the NBG5715 Web Configurator and provides an overview of its screens.

The Web Configurator is an HTML-based management interface that allows easy setup and management of the NBG5715 via Internet browser. Use Internet Explorer 6.0 and later versions, Mozilla Firefox 3 and later versions, or Safari 2.0 and later versions. The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels.

In order to use the Web Configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device. Web pop-up blocking is enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

Refer to the Troubleshooting chapter (Chapter 23 on page 167) to see how to make sure these functions are allowed in Internet Explorer.

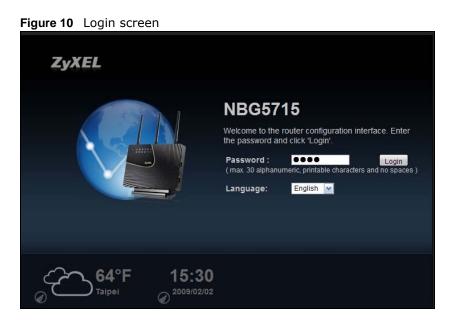
4.2 Accessing the Web Configurator

- 1 Make sure your NBG5715 hardware is properly connected and prepare your computer or computer network to connect to the NBG5715 (refer to the Quick Start Guide).
- 2 Launch your web browser.
- **3** Type "http://192.168.1.1" as the website address.

Your computer must be in the same subnet in order to access this website address.

4.2.1 Login Screen

The Web Configurator initially displays the following login screen.



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 7 Login scre	een
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Language	Select the language you want to use to configure the Web Configurator. Click Login.
Password	Type "1234" (default) as the password.
	This shows the current weather, either in celsius or fahrenheit, of the city you specify in Section 4.2.2 on page 30.
15:03:09 2009-04-06	This shows the time (hh:mm:ss) and date (yyyy:mm:dd) of the timezone you select in Section 4.2.3 on page 31 or Section 22.5 on page 161. The time is in 24-hour format, for example 15:00 is 3:00 PM.

4.2.2 Weather Edit

You can change the temperature unit and select the location for which you want to know the weather.



Click the 🕢 icon to change the Weather display.

Figure 11 Change Weather



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 0 Change V	
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
°C or °F	Choose which temperature unit you want the NBG5715 to display.
Change Location	Select the location for which you want to know the weather. If the city you want is not listed, choose one that is closest to it.
Finish	Click this to apply the settings and refresh the date and time display.

Table 8 Change Weather

4.2.3 Time/Date Edit

One timezone can cover more than one country. You can choose a particular country in which the NBG5715 is located and have the NBG5715 display and use the current time and date for its logs.

Click the 🕢 icon to change the Weather display.

Figure 12 Change Password Screen

Change time zone		D
(GMT-06:00) Central America (GMT-06:00) Central Time (US & Canada)		
09-04-06	Finish	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 9 Change Password Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Change time zone	Select the specific country whose current time and date you want the NBG5715 to display.
Finish	Click this to apply the settings and refresh the weather display.

Note: You can also edit the timezone in Section 22.5 on page 161.

4.3 Resetting the NBG5715

If you forget your password or IP address, or you cannot access the Web Configurator, you will need to use the **RESET** button at the back of the NBG5715 to reload the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all configurations that you had previously saved, the password will be reset to "1234" and the IP address will be reset to "192.168.1.1".

4.3.1 How to Use the RESET Button

- 1 Make sure the power LED is on.
- 2 Press the **RESET** button for longer than 1 second to restart/reboot the NBG5715.
- 3 Press the RESET button for longer than 5 seconds to set the NBG5715 back to its factory-default configurations.

Monitor and Summary

5.1 Overview

This chapter discusses read-only information related to the device state of the NBG5715.

To access the Monitor screens, go to Expert Mode after login, then click



You can also click the **Details** links in the **Summary** table of the **Status** screen to view the bandwidth consumed, packets sent/received as well as the status of clients connected to the NBG5715.



5.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter

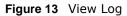
- Use the Log screens to see the logs for the activity on the NBG5715 (Section 5.3 on page 33).
- Use the **DHCP Table** screen to view information related to your DHCP status (Section 5.4 on page 34).
- use the **Packet Statistics** screen to view port status, packet specific statistics, the "system up time" and so on (Section 5.5 on page 35).
- Use the VPN Monitor screen to view the active VPN connections (Section 5.6 on page 36).
- Use the WLAN_2.4G/5G Station Status screen to view the 2.4G wireless stations that are currently associated to the NBG5715 (Section 5.7 on page 37).

5.3 The Log Screen

The Web Configurator allows you to look at all of the NBG5715's logs in one location.

5.3.1 View Log

Use the **View Log** screen to see the logged messages for the NBG5715. The log wraps around and deletes the old entries after it fills. Select what logs you want to see from the **Display** drop list. The log choices depend on your settings in the **Log Settings** screen. Click **Refresh** to renew the log screen. Click **Clear** to delete all the logs.



splay :	All Logs	Refresh Clear Log
/PN Su	immary	
#	<u>Time</u> ▽	Message
1	Jan 1 19:41:09	user.alert kernel: V4 : 3A01A8C0
	Jan 1 19:41:09	user alert kernel: INFO1181: new connection sbus c5eb8800

You can configure which logs to display in the **View Log** screen. Go to the **Log Settings** screen and select the logs you wish to display. Click **Apply** to save your settings. Click **Refresh** to start the screen afresh.

Figure 14 Log Settings

View Log Log Settings			
Active Log and Alert			
Log			
System Maintenance			
System Errors			
Access Control			
	Apply	Cancel	

5.4 DHCP Table

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual clients to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the NBG5715's LAN as a DHCP server or disable it. When configured as a server, the NBG5715 provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If DHCP service is disabled, you must have another DHCP server on that network, or else the computer must be manually configured.

Click **Monitor** > **DHCP Table** or the **DHCP Table (Details...)** hyperlink in the **Status** screen. Read-only information here relates to your DHCP status. The DHCP table shows current DHCP client information (including **MAC Address**, **IP Address**, and **Expiration time**) of all network clients using the NBG5715's DHCP server.

Figure 15 Summary: DHCP Table

HCP	Table				
•	Status	Host Name	IP Address	MAC Address	Reserve
	9	*	192.168.1.58	00:24:21:7e:20:96	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
#	This is the index number of the host computer.		
Status	This field displays whether the connection to the host computer is up (a yellow bulb) or down (a gray bulb).		
Host Name This field displays the computer host name.			
IP Address	This field displays the IP address relative to the # field listed above.		
MAC Address	This field shows the MAC address of the computer with the name in the Host Name field.		
	Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address which uniquely identifies a device. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02.		
Reserve Select this if you want to reserve the IP address for this specific MAC address			
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.		
Reset Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.			

Table 10 Summary: DHCP Table

5.5 Packet Statistics

Click **Monitor** > **Packet Statistics** or the **Packet Statistics (Details...)** hyperlink in the **Status** screen. Read-only information here includes port status, packet specific statistics and the "system up time". The **Poll Interval(s)** field is configurable and is used for refreshing the screen.

Port Status TxPkts RxPkts Collisions Tx B/s Rx B/s WAN Down 0 0 0 0 0 0 LAN 1000M 51266 8520 0 214 14								acket Statistics
	s Up Time	Rx B/s	Tx B/s	Collisions	RxPkts	TxPkts	Status	Port
LAN 1000M 51266 8520 0 214 14	20: 03: 11	0	0	0	0	0	Down	WAN
	20: 03: 11	14	214	0	8520	51266	1000M	LAN
WLAN 2.4G 450M 1932 40401 0 0 66	20: 03: 11	66	0	0	40401	1932	450M	WLAN 2.4G
WLAN 5G 450M 0 0 0 0 0	20: 03: 11	0	0	0	0	0	450M	WLAN 5G

Figure 16 Summary: Packet Statistics

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION			
Port	This is the NBG5715's port type.			
Status	For the LAN ports, this displays the port speed and duplex setting or Down when the line is disconnected.			
	For the WAN port, it displays the port speed and duplex setting if you're using Ethernet encapsulation and Idle (line (ppp) idle), Dial (starting to trigger a call) and Drop (dropping a call) if you're using PPPoE or PPTP encapsulation. This field displays Down when the line is disconnected.			
	For the WLAN, it displays the maximum transmission rate when the WLAN is enabled and Down when the WLAN is disabled.			
TxPkts	This is the number of transmitted packets on this port.			
RxPkts	s This is the number of received packets on this port.			
Collisions	isions This is the number of collisions on this port.			
Tx B/s	/s This displays the transmission speed in bytes per second on this port.			
Rx B/s	This displays the reception speed in bytes per second on this port.			
Up Time	This is the total time the NBG5715 has been for each session.			
System Up Time	Up Time This is the total time the NBG5715 has been on.			
Poll Interval(s)	erval(s) Enter the time interval in seconds for refreshing statistics in this field.			
Set Interval	Click this button to apply the new poll interval you entered in the Poll Interval(s) field.			
Stop	Click Stop to stop refreshing statistics.			

 Table 11
 Summary: Packet Statistics

5.6 VPN Monitor

Click **Monitor** > **VPN Monitor** or the **VPN Monitor** (**Details**...) hyperlink in the **Status** screen. This screen displays read-only information about the active VPN connections. Click the Refresh button to update the screen. A Security Association (SA) is the group of security settings related to a specific VPN tunnel.

Figure 17	Summary:	Security	Associations
-----------	----------	----------	--------------

Se	Security Associations							
	Current IPSec Security Association							
	Status	Connection Name	Remote Gateway	Local Address	Remote Address			
			Refresh					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field displays whether the VPN connection is up (a yellow bulb) or down (a gray bulb).
Connection Name	This field displays the identification name for this VPN policy.
Remote Gateway	This is the static WAN IP address or URL of the remote IPSec router.
Local Address	This is the IP address of computer(s) on your local network behind your NBG5715.
Remote Address	This is the IP address of computer(s) on the remote network behind the remote IPSec router.
Refresh	Click this button to update the screen's statistics immediately.

Table 12 Summary: Security Associations

5.7 WLAN_2.4G/5G Station Status

Click Monitor > WLAN_2.4G/5G Station Status or the WLAN 2.4G/5G WLAN Station Status (Details...) hyperlink in the Status screen. View the wireless stations that are currently associated to the NBG5715 in the Association List. Association means that a wireless client (for example, your network or computer with a wireless network card) has connected successfully to the AP (or wireless router) using the same SSID, channel and security settings.

Figure 18 Summary: Wireless Association List

Association L	ist	
#	MAC Address	Association Time
1	00:22:FB:65:9A:F4	03:39:07 1970/01/01

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This is the index number of an associated wireless station.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of an associated wireless station.
Association Time	This field displays the time a wireless station first associated with the NBG5715's WLAN network.

Table 13 Summary: Wireless Association List

NBG5715 Modes

6.1 Overview

This chapter introduces the different modes available on your NBG5715. First, the term "mode" refers to two things in this User's Guide.

- Web Configurator mode. This refers to the Web Configurator interface you want to use for editing NBG5715 features.
- **Router mode**: This is the device mode of the NBG5715. Use this mode to connect the local network to another network, like the Internet. Go to Section 8.2 on page 51 to view the **Status** screen in this mode.

6.1.1 Web Configurator Modes

This refers to the configuration interface of the Web Configurator, which has two modes:

- **Easy**: The Web Configurator shows this mode by default. Refer to Chapter 7 on page 41 for more information on the screens in this mode. This interface may be sufficient for users who just want to use the device.
- Expert: Advanced users can change to this mode to customize all the functions of the NBG5715. Click Expert Mode after logging into the Web Configurator. The User's Guide Chapter 4 on page 29 discusses the screens in this mode.

Easy Mode

7.1 Overview

The Web Configurator is set to **Easy Mode** by default. You can configure several key features of the NBG5715 in this mode. This mode is useful to users who are not fully familiar with some features that are usually intended for network administrators.

When you log in to the Web Configurator, the following screen opens.

NBG5715 Expert Mode Home E Logout Modem Howard PC **Network Map** WIFI 1 PC WiFi 2 Game WIFI 3 AP Firew Game Engine Content Filter Wireless Power Saving Bandwidth ON OFF ON ON ON

Figure 19 Easy Mode: Network Map

Click Status to open the following screen.

NBG571	⁵ Navigation Panel	Home DExpert Mode Degou
Go to Network	Name :	ZyXEL NBG5715
	Time :	1970-01-01/09:14:47
Map	WAN IP :	
Screen	MAC Address : Firmware Version :	00:AA:BB:CC:DD:EE NBG5715_1.00(AAAG.0)b1
Network		1000710_1.00(AAAO.0)01
MAP	Wireless_2.4G Network Name (SSID) :	ZyXEL
	Security :	No security
	Wireless_5G Network Name (SSID) :	ZyXEL
	Security:	No security
	Status S	creen
	Control I	Panal
Game Engine		andwidth GMT Firewall Security
ON OFF		OFF

Figure 20 Easy Mode: Status Screen

7.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter

You can do the following in this mode:

- Use this Navigation Panel to opt out of the Easy mode (Section 7.3 on page 42).
- Use the **Network Map** screen to check if your NBG5715 can ping the gateway and whether it is connected to the Internet (Section 7.4 on page 43).
- Use the **Control Panel** to configure and enable NBG5715 features, including wireless security, wireless scheduling and bandwidth management and so on (Section 7.5 on page 44).
- Use the **Status Screen** to view read-only information about the NBG5715, including the WAN IP, MAC Address of the NBG5715 and the firmware version (Section 7.6 on page 49).

7.3 Navigation Panel

Use this navigation panel to opt out of the **Easy** mode.

Figure 21 Control Panel

NBG5715	💮 Home	Expert Mode	E Logout
	9		v

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 14 Co	ontrol Par	nel
-------------	------------	-----

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Home	Click this to go to the Login page.

Table 14 Control Panel	continued)
ITEM DESCRIPTION	
Expert Mode	Click this to change to Expert mode and customize features of the NBG5715.
Logout	Click this to end the Web Configurator session.

 Table 14
 Control Panel (continued)

7.4 Network Map

- Note: The Network MAP is viewable by Windows XP (need to install patch), Windows Vista and Windows 7 users only. For Windows XP (Service Pack 2) users, you can see the network devices connected to the NBG5715 by downloading the LLTD (Link Layer Topology Discovery) patch from the Microsoft Website.
- Note: Don't worry if the Network Map does not display in your web browser. This feature may not be supported by your system. You can still configure the Control Panel (Section 7.5 on page 44) in the **Easy Mode** and the NBG5715 features that you want to use in the **Expert Mode**.

When you log into the Network Configurator, the Network Map is shown as follows.



Figure 22 Network Map

The line connecting the NBG5715 to the gateway becomes green when the NBG5715 is able to ping the gateway. It becomes red when the ping initiating from the NBG5715 does not get a response from the gateway. The same rule applies to the line connecting the gateway to the Internet.

You can also view the devices (represented by icons indicating the kind of network device) connected to the NBG5715, including those connecting wirelessly. Right-click on the NBG5715 icon to refresh the network map. Right click on the other icons to view information about the device.

7.5 Control Panel

The features configurable in Easy Mode are shown in the Control Panel.

Figure 23	Control	Panel
-----------	---------	-------



Switch **ON** to enable the feature. Otherwise, switch **OFF**. If the feature is turned on, the green light flashes. If it is turned off, the red light flashes.

Additionally, click the feature to open a screen where you can edit its settings.

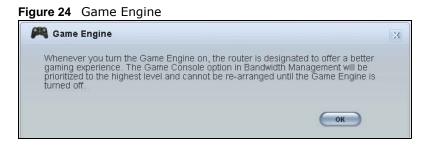
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Game Engine	Switch ON to maximize bandwidth for gaming traffic in your network. Otherwise, switch OFF .
	Refer to Section 7.5.1 on page 44 to see this screen.
Power Saving	Click this to schedule the wireless feature of the NBG5715.
	Disabling the wireless function helps lower the energy consumption of the NBG5715.
	Switch ON to apply wireless scheduling. Otherwise, switch OFF .
	Refer to Section 7.5.2 on page 45 to see this screen.
Content Filter	Click this to restrict access to certain websites, based on keywords contained in URLs, to which you do not want users in your network to open.
	Switch ON to apply website filtering. Otherwise, switch OFF .
	Refer to Section 7.5.3 on page 46 to see this screen.
Bandwidth MGMT	Click this to edit bandwidth management for predefined applications.
	Switch ON to have the NBG5715 management bandwidth for uplink and downlink traffic according to an application or service. Otherwise, switch OFF .
	Refer to Section 7.5.4 on page 47 to see this screen.
Firewall	Switch ON to ensure that your network is protected from Denial of Service (DoS) attacks. Otherwise, switch OFF .
	Refer to Section 7.5.5 on page 47 to see this screen.
Wireless Security	Click this to configure the wireless security, such as SSID, security mode and WPS key on your NBG5715.
	Refer to Section 7.5.6 on page 47 to see this screen.

Table 15Control Panel

7.5.1 Game Engine

When this feature is enabled, the NBG5715 maximizes the bandwidth for gaming traffic that it forwards out through an interface.



Note: When this is switched on, the **Game Console** tab in the **Bandwidth Mgmt** screen is automatically positioned on top.

Turn this off if your network is not using gaming.

Click **OK** to close this screen.

7.5.2 Power Saving

Use this screen to set the day of the week and time of the day when your wireless LAN is turned on and off. Wireless LAN scheduling is disabled by default.

Disabling the wireless capability lowers the energy consumption of the of the NBG5715.

Figure 25 Power Saving

💋 Power Sa	ving	Х	
Please sche	dule the wirele	ess service with the table below.	
Wireless Radio :	2.4G Hz 💌		
WLAN status	Day	Except for the following times (24-Hour Format)	
C On C Off	🔽 Everyday	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)	
€ on € Off	🗖 Mon	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)	
€ On € Off	Tue Tue	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)	
€ On € Off	□ Wed	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)	
C On 🖲 Off	🗖 Thu	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)	
C On € Off	🗖 Fri	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)	
€ On € Off	🗖 Sat	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)	
C On C Off	🗖 Sun	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)	
		Apply Reset	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table To Tower Saving	
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Radio	Choose whether you want to apply the power saving schedule to 2.4G hz or 5G hz wireless radio.
WLAN Status	Select On or Off to specify whether the Wireless LAN is turned on or off (depending on what you selected in the WLAN Status field). This field works in conjunction with the Day and For the following times fields.

Table 16 Power Saving

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Day	Select Everyday or the specific days to turn the Wireless LAN on or off.
	If you select Everyday you can not select any specific days. This field works in conjunction with the For the following times field.
Except for the following times (24-Hour Format)	Select a begin time using the first set of hour and minute (min) drop down boxes and select an end time using the second set of hour and minute (min) drop down boxes. If you have chosen On earlier for the WLAN Status the Wireless LAN will turn on between the two times you enter in these fields. If you have chosen Off earlier for the WLAN Status the Wireless LAN will turn off between the two times you enter in these fields. In this time format, midnight is 00:00 and progresses up to 24:00. For example, 6:00 PM is 18:00.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 16 Power Saving (continued)

7.5.3 Content Filter

Use this screen to restrict access to certain websites, based on keywords contained in URLs, to which you do not want users in your network to open.

Figure 26 Content Filter

Content Filter	×
Any URLs that contains any of the following keywords will be blocked and cannot be browsed.	
Add Key Word Add Delete	
Example 1	
Example 2	
Example 3	
(Apply) (Cancel	

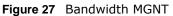
LABELDESCRIPTIONAddClick Add after you have typed a keyword.
Repeat this procedure to add other keywords. Up to 64 keywords are allowed.
Note: The NBG5715 does not recognize wildcard characters as keywords.
When you try to access a web page containing a keyword, you will get a
message telling you that the content filter is blocking this request.DeleteHighlight a keyword in the text box and click Delete to remove it. The keyword
disappears from the text box after you click Apply.ApplyClick Apply to save your changes.CancelClick Cancel to close this screen without saving any changes.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

7.5.4 Bandwidth MGMT

Use this screen to set bandwidth allocation to pre-defined services and applications for bandwidth allocation.

The NBG5715 uses bandwidth management for incoming and outgoing traffic. Rank the services and applications by dragging them accordingly from **High** to **Low** and click **Apply**. Click **Cancel** to close the screen.



Bandwidth MGMT	
Drag the sliders to adjust the bandwidth for each network application.	
Web Surfing	Use your mouse
Instant Messenger	to drag the items according to how
Game Console	 you want to prioritize them.
	Left-click and slide up or down.
E-mail	
Low (pilofity) Others	
(priority) Apply Cancel	

7.5.5 Firewall

Enable this feature to protect the network from Denial of Service (DoS) attacks. The NBG5715 blocks repetitive pings from the WAN that can otherwise cause systems to slow down or hang.

Figure	28	Firewall
Iguie	20	Thewan

Firewall	×
Enabling Firewall protects your computers against malicious attacks from the Internet.	
ОК	

Click **OK** to close this screen.

7.5.6 Wireless Security

Use this screen to configure security for your the Wireless LAN. You can enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode in the following screen.

Note: You can enable the Wireless function of your NBG5715 by first turning on the switch in the side panel.

Figure 29 Wireless Security

Wir	eless Radio :	2.4G Hz 💌	
Wir	eless Network Name (SSID) :	ZyXEL	6
Sec	urity mode :	No Security 💌	WPS

The following table describes the general wireless LAN labels in this screen.

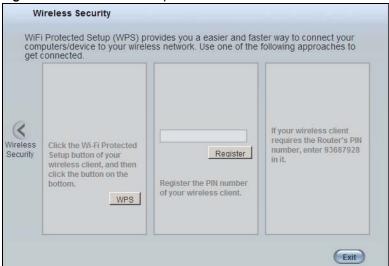
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Radio	Choose whether you want to apply the wireless security to 2.4G hz or 5G hz wireless radio.
Wireless Network Name (SSID)	(Service Set IDentity) The SSID identifies the Service Set with which a wireless station is associated. Wireless stations associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 keyboard characters) for the wireless LAN.
Security mode	Select WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK to add security on this wireless network. The wireless clients which want to associate to this network must have same wireless security settings as this device. After you select to use a security, additional options appears in this screen.
	Select No Security to allow any client to connect to this network without authentication.
Wireless password	This field appears when you choose wither WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK as the security mode.
	Type a pre-shared key from 8 to 63 case-sensitive keyboard characters.
Verify password	Type the password again to confirm.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to close this screen.
WPS	Click this to configure the WPS screen.
	You can transfer the wireless settings configured here (Wireless Security screen) to another wireless device that supports WPS.

Table 18Wireless Security

7.5.7 WPS

Use this screen to add a wireless station to the network using WPS. Click **WPS** in the **Wireless Security** to open the following screen.

Figure 30 Wireless Security: WPS



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 19 Wireless Security: WPS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Security	Click this to go back to the Wireless Security screen.
WPS	Create a secure wireless network simply by pressing a button.
	The NBG5715 scans for a WPS-enabled device within the range and performs wireless security information synchronization.
	Note: After you click the WPS button on this screen, you have to press a similar button in the wireless station utility within 2 minutes. To add the second wireless station, you have to press these buttons on both device and the wireless station again after the first 2 minutes.
Register	Create a secure wireless network simply by entering a wireless client's PIN (Personal Identification Number) in the NBG5715's interface and pushing this button.
	Type the same PIN number generated in the wireless station's utility. Then click Register to associate to each other and perform the wireless security information synchronization.
Exit	Click Exit to close this screen.

7.6 Status Screen in Easy Mode

In the Network Map screen, click **Status** to view read-only information about the NBG5715.

Figure 31 Status Screen in Easy Mode

Name :	ZyXEL NBG5715
Time :	1970-01-01/09:14:47
WAN IP :	
MAC Address :	00:AA:BB:CC:DD:EE
Firmware Version :	NBG5715_1.00(AAAG.0)b1
Wireless_2.4G Network Name (SSID) :	ZyXEL
Security :	No security
Wireless_5G Network Name (SSID) :	ZyXEL
Security :	No security

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Name	This is the name of the NBG5715 in the network. You can change this in the Maintenance > General screen in Section 22.3 on page 159.
Time	This is the current system date and time.
	The date is in YYYY:MM:DD (Year-Month-Day) format. The time is in HH:MM:SS (Hour:Minutes:Seconds) format.
WAN IP	This is the IP address of the WAN port.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the NBG5715.
Firmware Version	This shows the firmware version of the NBG5715.
	The firmware version format shows the trunk version, model code and release number.
Wireless_2.4G/5G Network Name (SSID)	This shows the SSID of the wireless network. You can configure this in the Wireless Security screen (Section 7.5.6 on page 47; Section 11.2 on page 79).
Security	This shows the wireless security used by the NBG5715.

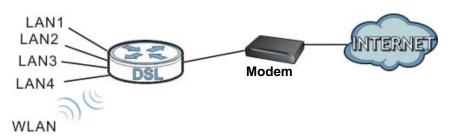
 Table 20
 Status Screen in Easy Mode

Router Mode

8.1 Overview

The NBG5715 operates as a router. Routers are used to connect the local network to another network (for example, the Internet). In the figure below, the NBG5715 connects the local network (LAN1 ~ LAN4) to the Internet.

Figure 32 NBG5715 Network



Note: The Status screen is shown after changing to the Expert mode of the Web Configurator. It varies depending on the device mode of your NBG5715.

8.2 Router Mode Status Screen

Click to open the status screen.

			Refresh Interval: 30 secon	nds 💌 Refresh Nov
e Information		System Status		
	Data	Item	Data	
lame:	NBG5715	System Up Time:	0day 1hr 2	1min 46sec
Number:	NBG5715	Current Date/Time:	1970-01-0	1/09:22:09
ddress:	00:AA:BB:CC:DD:EE	System Resource:		
are Version:	NBG5715_1.00(AAAG.0)b1	- CPU Usage:		1%
nformation		- Memory Usage:		43%
ddress:				
ubnet Mask:				
ault Gateway:		Interface Status		
formation:		Interface	Status	Rate
ddress:	192.168.1.1	WAN	Down	
ubnet Mask:	255.255.255.0	LAN1	Up	1000M
CP:	Server	LAN2	Down	
_2.4G Information:		LAN3	Down	
D:	ZyXEL	LAN4	Down	
annel:		WLAN_2.4G	Up	450M
urity:	No security	WLAN_5G	Up	450M
_5G Information:				
D:	ZyXEL	2.		
annel:				
urity:	No security			
wall:	disable			
	Jame: Number: ddress: are Version: nformation ddress: ubnet Mask: autt Gateway: formation: ddress: ubnet Mask: pp: _2.4G Information: pp: _2.4G Information: p: 	Data Name: NBG5715 Number: NBG5715 oddress: 00-AA BB CC DD EE are Version: NBG5715_1.00(AAAG.0)b1 information	Data Item Name: NBG5715 System Up Time: Number: 00AA.BB/CCDD/EE System Date/Time: ddress: 00AA.BB/CCDD/EE System Resource: are Version: NBG5715_1.00(AAAG.0)b1 - CPU Usage: information - CPU Usage: - Memory Usage: ubnet Mask: - Memory Usage: - Memory Usage: ubnet Mask: 192.168.1.1 Interface Status ubnet Mask: 255.255.255.0 LAN1 24G Information:	Data Item Data Name: NBG5715 System Up Time: Oday 1hr 2 Number: 00 AA BB: OC DD: EE System Resource: 1970-01-0 are Version: NBG5715_1.00(AAAG.0)b1 System Resource: 1970-01-0 nformation - - CUrrent Date/Time: 1970-01-0 dress: 00 AA BB: OC DD: EE System Resource: - - information - - CPU Usage: _ _ ubnet Mask: - - CPU Usage: _ _ _ _ _ _ Marce _ <

Figure 33 Status: Router Mode

The following table describes the icons shown in the $\ensuremath{\textit{Status}}$ screen.

Table 21	Status	Router	Mode
	Julius.	Nouter	nouc

ICON	DESCRIPTION
Logout	Click this icon to logout of the web configurator.
₹ <u>About</u>	Click this icon to view copyright and a link for related product information.
e Easy Mode	Click this icon to go to Easy Mode. See Chapter 7 on page 41.
Refresh Interval: None	Select a number of seconds or None from the drop-down list box to refresh all screen statistics automatically at the end of every time interval or to not refresh the screen statistics.
Refresh Now	Click this button to refresh the status screen statistics.
	Click this icon to see the Status page. The information in this screen depends on the device mode you select.
	Click this icon to see the Monitor navigation menu.
<u></u>	Click this icon to see the Configuration navigation menu.
R	Click this icon to see the Maintenance navigation menu.

The following table describes the labels shown in the **Status** screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Device Information	
Host Name	This is the System Name you enter in the Maintenance > General screen. It is for identification purposes.
Model Number	This is the model name of your device.
MAC Address	This shows the WAN Ethernet adapter MAC Address of your device.
Firmware Version	This is the firmware version and the date created.
WAN Information	·
- IP Address	This shows the WAN port's IP address.
- IP Subnet Mask	This shows the WAN port's subnet mask.
- Default Gateway	This shows the WAN port's gateway IP address.
LAN Information	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
- IP Address	This shows the LAN port's IP address.
- IP Subnet Mask	This shows the LAN port's subnet mask.
- DHCP	This shows the LAN port's DHCP role - Server or Disable.
WLAN_2.4G Information	·
- SSID	This shows a descriptive name used to identify the NBG5715 in the wireless LAN.
- Channel	This shows the channel number which the NBG5715 is currently using over the wireless LAN.
- Security	This shows the level of wireless security the NBG5715 is using.
WLAN_5G Information	
- SSID	This shows a descriptive name used to identify the NBG5715 in the wireless LAN.
- Channel	This shows the channel number which the NBG5715 is currently using over the wireless LAN.
- Security	This shows the level of wireless security the NBG5715 is using.
- Firewall	This shows whether the firewall is enabled or not.
System Status	·
Item	This column shows the type of data the NBG5715 is recording.
Data	This column shows the actual data recorded by the NBG5715.
System Up Time	This is the total time the NBG5715 has been on.
Current Date/Time	This field displays your NBG5715's present date and time.
System Resource	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
- CPU Usage	This displays what percentage of the NBG5715's processing ability is currently used. When this percentage is close to 100%, the NBG5715 is running at full load, and the throughput is not going to improve anymore. If you want some applications to have more throughput, you should turn off other applications (for example, using bandwidth management.)
- Memory Usage	This shows what percentage of the heap memory the NBG5715 is using.
Interface Status	
Interface	This displays the NBG5715 port types. The port types are: WAN, LAN and WLAN.

 Table 22
 Status Screen: Router Mode

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	For the LAN and WAN ports, this field displays Down (line is down) or Up (line is up or connected).
	For the WLAN, it displays \mbox{Up} when the WLAN is enabled or \mbox{Down} when the WLAN is disabled.
Rate	For the LAN ports, this displays the port speed and duplex setting or ${\rm N/A}$ when the line is disconnected.
	For the WAN port, it displays the port speed and duplex setting if you're using Ethernet encapsulation. This field displays N/A when the line is disconnected.
	For the WLAN 2.4G/5G, it displays the maximum transmission rate when the WLAN 2.4G/5G is enabled and N/A when the WLAN is disabled.
Summary	
Packet Statistics	Click Details to go to the Monitor > Packet Statistics screen (Section 5.5 on page 35). Use this screen to view port status and packet specific statistics.
WLAN_2.4G Station Status	Click Details to go to the Monitor > WLAN_2.4G Station Status screen (Section 5.7 on page 37). Use this screen to view the wireless stations that are currently associated to the NBG5715.
WLAN_5G Station Status	Click Details to go to the Monitor > WLAN_5G Station Status screen (Section 5.7 on page 37). Use this screen to view the wireless stations that are currently associated to the NBG5715.
IPSec VPN Status	Click Details to go to the Monitor > VPN Monitor screen (Section 5.4 on page 34). Use this screen to view the active VPN connections.

 Table 22
 Status Screen: Router Mode (continued)

8.2.1 Navigation Panel

Use the sub-menus on the navigation panel to configure NBG5715 features.



Figure 34 Navigation Panel: Router Mode

The following table describes the sub-menus.

Table 23 Navigation	on Panel: Rout	er Mode
LINK	ТАВ	FUNCTION
Status		This screen shows the NBG5715's general device, system and interface status information. Use this screen to access the summary statistics tables.
MONITOR		
Log		Use this screen to view the list of activities recorded by your NBG5715.
DHCP Table		Use this screen to view current DHCP client information.
Packet Statistics		Use this screen to view port status and packet specific statistics.
VPN Monitor		Use this screen to view the active VPN connections.
WLAN_2.4G Station Status		Use this screen to view the 2.4G wireless stations that are currently associated to the NBG5715.
WLAN_5G Station Status		Use this screen to view the 5G wireless stations that are currently associated to the NBG5715.
CONFIGURATION		
Network		
WAN	Broadband	This screen allows you to configure ISP parameters, WAN IP address assignment, DNS servers and the WAN MAC address.
	Advanced	Use this screen to configure other advanced properties.
Wireless LAN 2.4G	General	Use this screen to enable the 2.4G wireless LAN network, configure its SSID, channel, and the wireless security level.
	MAC Filter	Use the MAC filter screen to configure the NBG5715 to block access to devices or block the devices from accessing the NBG5715.
	Advanced	This screen allows you to configure advanced wireless settings.
	QoS	Use this screen to configure Wi-Fi Multimedia Quality of Service (WMM QoS). WMM QoS allows you to prioritize wireless traffic according to the delivery requirements of individual services.
	WPS	Use this screen to configure WPS.
	WPS Station	Use this screen to add a wireless station using WPS.
	Scheduling	Use this screen to schedule the times the Wireless LAN is enabled.
Wireless LAN 5G	General	Use this screen to enable the 5G wireless LAN network, configure its SSID, channel, and the wireless security level.
	MAC Filter	Use the MAC filter screen to configure the NBG5715 to block access to devices or block the devices from accessing the NBG5715.
	Advanced	This screen allows you to configure advanced wireless settings.
	QoS	Use this screen to configure Wi-Fi Multimedia Quality of Service (WMM QoS). WMM QoS allows you to prioritize wireless traffic according to the delivery requirements of individual services.
	WPS	Use this screen to configure WPS.
	WPS Station	Use this screen to add a wireless station using WPS.
	Scheduling	Use this screen to schedule the times the Wireless LAN is enabled.
LAN	IP	Use this screen to configure LAN IP address and subnet mask.
	IP Alias	Use this screen to have the NBG5715 apply IP alias to create LAN subnets.

Table 23	Navigation	Panel:	Router	Mode
----------	------------	--------	--------	------

LINK	ТАВ	FUNCTION
DHCP Server	General	Use this screen to enable the NBG5715's DHCP server.
	Advanced	Use this screen to assign IP addresses to specific individual computers based on their MAC addresses and to have DNS servers assigned by the DHCP server.
	Client List	Use this screen to view information related to your DHCP status.
NAT	General	Use this screen to enable NAT.
	Port Forwaring	Use this screen to configure forward incoming service requests to the server(s) on your local network.
	NAT Advanced	Use this screen to change your NBG5715's port triggering settings.
Dynamic DNS	Dynamic DNS	Use this screen to set up dynamic DNS.
Static Route	Static Route	Use this screen to configure IP static routes.
Security		
Firewall	General	Use this screen to activate/deactivate the firewall.
	Services	This screen shows a summary of the firewall rules, and allows you to edit/add a firewall rule.
IPSec VPN	General	Use this screen to display and manage the NBG5715's VPN rules (tunnels).
	SA Monitor	Use this screen to display and manage active VPN connections.
Management		
Bandwidth	General	Use this screen to enable bandwidth management.
MGMT	Advance	Use this screen to set the upstream bandwidth and edit a bandwidth management rule.
Remote MGMT	www	Use this screen to configure through which interface(s) and from which IP address(es) users can use HTTP to manage the NBG5715.
	Telnet	Use this screen to configure through which interface(s) and from which IP address(es) users can use Telnet to manage the NBG5715.
UPnP	UPnP	Use this screen to enable UPnP on the NBG5715.
MAINTENANCE		
General	General	Use this screen to view and change administrative settings such as system and domain names.
Password	Password Setup	Use this screen to change the password of your NBG5715.
Time	Time Setting	Use this screen to change your NBG5715's time and date.
Firmware Upgrade	Firmware Upgrade	Use this screen to upload firmware to your NBG5715.
Backup/ Restore	Backup/ Restore	Use this screen to backup and restore the configuration or reset the factory defaults to your NBG5715.
Language	Language	This screen allows you to select the language you prefer.

 Table 23
 Navigation Panel: Router Mode (continued)

Tutorials

9.1 Overview

This chapter provides tutorials for setting up your NBG5715.

- Set Up a Wireless Network with WPS
- Configure Wireless Security without WPS

9.2 Set Up a Wireless Network with WPS

This section gives you an example of how to set up wireless network using WPS. This example uses the NBG5715 as the AP and NWD210N as the wireless client which connects to a notebook. Wireless LAN 2.4G is used as the wireless mode in this example.

Note: The wireless client must be a WPS-aware device (for example, a WPS USB adapter or PCI card).

There are two WPS methods for creating a secure connection. This tutorial shows you how to do both.

- **Push Button Configuration (PBC)** create a secure wireless network simply by pressing a button. See Section 9.2.1 on page 57.This is the easier method.
- **PIN Configuration** create a secure wireless network simply by entering a wireless client's PIN (Personal Identification Number) in the NBG5715's interface. See Section 9.2.2 on page 59. This is the more secure method, since one device can authenticate the other.

9.2.1 Push Button Configuration (PBC)

- 1 Make sure that your NBG5715 is turned on. The wireless LAN is enabled by default. Check if WLAN 2.4G LED is on. If not, you can enable wireless LAN by pressing the WLAN On/Off button on the device's side panel or in the Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G screen. Make sure that the device is placed within range of your computer.
- 2 Make sure that you have installed the wireless client (this example uses the NWD210N) driver and utility in your notebook.
- 3 In the wireless client utility, find the WPS settings. Enable WPS and press the WPS button (Start or WPS button).
- 4 Log into NBG5715's Web Configurator and press the Push Button in the Configuration > Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G > WPS Station screen.

General	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling
0.500.000			d WPS station	s to wireless netw	volk. Push Button
Or inp	ut station's PI	N number :		Start	
No:	te:				
1.	The Push Bu	utton Configura	ation requires	pressing a butto	n on both the station and AP within 120 seconds.
2.	You may find	d the PIN num	ber in the stati	ion's utility.	

- Note: Your NBG5715 has a WPS button located on its front panel, as well as a WPS button in its configuration utility. Both buttons have exactly the same function; you can use one or the other.
- Note: It doesn't matter which button is pressed first. You must press the second button within two minutes of pressing the first one.

The NBG5715 sends the proper configuration settings to the wireless client. This may take up to two minutes. Then the wireless client is able to communicate with the NBG5715 securely.

The following figure shows you an example to set up wireless network and security by pressing a button on both NBG5715 and wireless client (the NWD210N in this example).

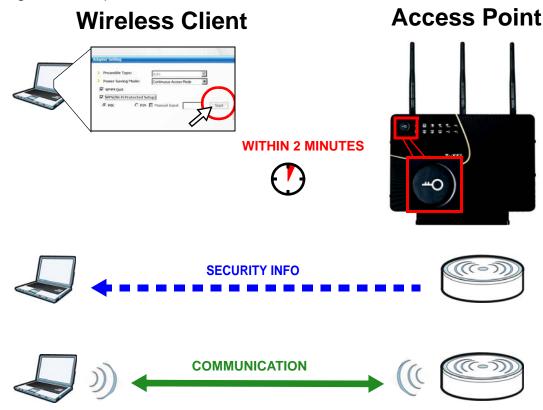


Figure 35 Example WPS Process: PBC Method

9.2.2 PIN Configuration

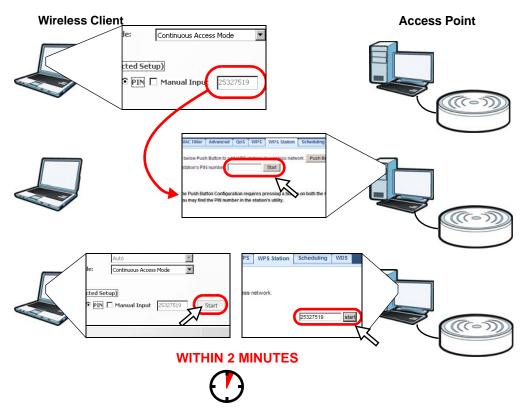
When you use the PIN configuration method, you need to use both NBG5715's configuration interface and the client's utilities.

- 1 Launch your wireless client's configuration utility. Go to the WPS settings and select the PIN method to get a PIN number.
- 2 Enter the PIN number to the PIN field in the Configuration > Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G > WPS Station screen on the NBG5715.
- 3 Click Start buttons (or button next to the PIN field) on both the wireless client utility screen and the NBG5715's WPS Station screen within two minutes.

The NBG5715 authenticates the wireless client and sends the proper configuration settings to the wireless client. This may take up to two minutes. Then the wireless client is able to communicate with the NBG5715 securely.

The following figure shows you the example to set up wireless network and security on NBG5715 and wireless client (ex. NWD210N in this example) by using PIN method.

Figure 36 Example WPS Process: PIN Method



9.3 Configure Wireless Security without WPS

This example shows you how to configure wireless security settings with the following parameters on your NBG5715.

Wireless LAN Mode	2.4G
SSID	SSID_Example3
Channel	6
Security	WPA-PSK
	(Pre-Shared Key: ThisismyWPA-PSKpre-sharedkey)

Follow the steps below to configure the wireless settings on your NBG5715.

The instructions require that your hardware is connected (see the Quick Start Guide) and you are logged into the Web Configurator through your LAN connection (see Section 4.2 on page 29).

- 1 Open the **Configuration** > **Wireless LAN 2.4G** > **General** screen in the AP's Web Configurator.
- 2 Confirm that the status of wireless LAN is enabled.
- 3 Enter **SSID_Example3** as the SSID and select **Channel-06** as the channel.
- 4 Set security mode to WPA-PSK and enter ThisismyWPA-PSKpre-sharedkey in the Pre-Shared Key field. Click Apply.

Wireless LAN :	€ Enable
Name(SSID) :	SSID_Example3
Hide SSID	
Channel Selection :	Channel-06 2437MHz
Operating Channel :	Channel-6
Channel Width :	Auto 20/40 MHz 💌
Security	
Security Mode :	WPA-PSK
Pre-Shared Key	sismyWPA-PSKpre-sharedkey
Group Key Update Timer	3600 seconds
Note: WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK can be c	

5 Open the Status screen. Verify your WLAN 2.4G wireless and wireless security settings under **Device Information** and check if the WLAN 2.4G connection is up under **Interface Status**.

tatus			Refresh Interval: 30 sec	onds 💌 Refresh No
Device Information		System Status		
Item	Data	Item	Data	
Host Name:	NBG5715	System Up Time:	Oday 1hr	37min 25sec
Model Number:	NBG5715	Current Date/Time:	1970-01-	01/09:37:30
MAC Address:	00:AA:BB:CC:DD:EE	System Resource:		
Firmware Version:	NBG5715_1.00(AAAG.0)b1	- CPU Usage:		1%
WAN Information		- Memory Usage:		44%
- IP Address:				
- IP Subnet Mask:		1		
- Default Gateway:		Interface Status		
LAN Information:		Interface	Status	Rate
- IP Address:	192.168.1.1	WAN	Down	
- IP Subnet Mask:	255,255,255,0	LAN1	Up	1000M
- DHCP	Senjer	LAN2	Down	
WLAN_2.4G Information:		LAN3	Down	
- SSID:	SSID_Example3	LAN4	Down	
- Channel:	6	WLAN_2.4G	Up	450M
- Security:	WPAPSK	WLAN_5G	Up	450M
WLAN_5G Information:				
- SSID:	ZyXEL			
- Channel:				
- Security:	No security			
- Firewall:	disable			
Summary				
Packet Statistics (Details)				
WLAN_2.4G Station Status (Details)				

9.3.1 Configure Your Notebook

- Note: We use the ZyXEL M-302 wireless adapter utility screens as an example for the wireless client. The screens may vary for different models.
- 1 The NBG5715 supports IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g and IEEE 802.11n wireless clients. Make sure that your notebook or computer's wireless adapter supports one of these standards.
- 2 Wireless adapters come with software sometimes called a "utility" that you install on your computer. See your wireless adapter's User's Guide for information on how to do that.
- 3 After you've installed the utility, open it. If you cannot see your utility's icon on your screen, go to Start > Programs and click on your utility in the list of programs that appears. The utility displays a list of APs within range, as shown in the example screen below.

4 Select SSID_Example3 and click Connect.

	SSID	Channel	Signal 🗵 🔺	Network Type: Infrastructure
) cm	ZyXEL_MIS	6	62%	Network Mode: 802.11g
) cm	ZyXEL_YZU	6	62%	Channel: 6
1	ZyXEL_test	6	60%	Security: WPA-PSK
)	SSID_Example3	6	56%	MAC Address: 00:A0:C5:CD:1F:64
7	CPE_5257_00	11	54%	Surveyed at: 11:46:38
7			-	

5 Select WPA-PSK and type the security key in the following screen. Click **Next**.

Encryption Type:	WPA-PSK	-
Pre-Shared Key:	ThisismyWPA-PSKpre-sharedkey	4
	Back	Next Exit

6 The Confirm Save window appears. Check your settings and click Save to continue.

Confirm Save		
Network Name(SSID):	SSID_Example3	
> Network Type:	Infrastructure	
Network Mode:	802.11b/g	
Channel:	Auto	
Security:	WPA-PSK	
		Back Save Exit
		DdCK Save EXIT

7 Check the status of your wireless connection in the screen below. If your wireless connection is weak or you have no connection, see the Troubleshooting section of this User's Guide.

Wireless Network Status	Statistics
> Profile Name:	Transmit Rate: 2 Kbps
Network Name(SSID): SSID_Example3	Receive Rate: 0 Kbps
> AP MAC Address: 00:A0:C5:CD:1F:64	Authentication: None
Network Type: Infrastructure	Network Mode: 802.11g
Transmission Rate: 18 Mbps	Total Transmit: 46
Security: WPA-PSK	Total Receive: 3
> Channel: 6	Link Quality: -68 dBm
	Trend Chart

If your connection is successful, open your Internet browser and enter http://www.zyxel.com or the URL of any other web site in the address bar. If you are able to access the web site, your wireless connection is successfully configured.

PART II Technical Reference

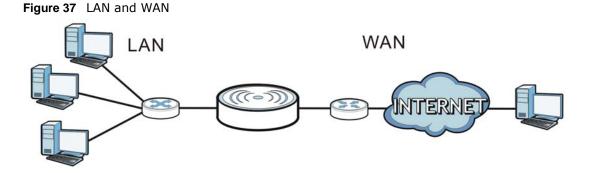
10

WAN

10.1 Overview

This chapter discusses the NBG5715's **WAN** screens. Use these screens to configure your NBG5715 for Internet access.

A WAN (Wide Area Network) connection is an outside connection to another network or the Internet. It connects your private networks such as a LAN (Local Area Network) and other networks, so that a computer in one location can communicate with computers in other locations.



10.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **Broadband** screen to enter your ISP information and set how the computer acquires its IP, DNS and WAN MAC addresses (Section 10.4 on page 69).
- Use the Advanced screen to enable multicasting (Section 10.5 on page 72).

10.3 What You Need To Know

The information in this section can help you configure the screens for your WAN connection, as well as enable/disable some advanced features of your NBG5715.

10.3.1 Configuring Your Internet Connection

Encapsulation Method

Encapsulation is used to include data from an upper layer protocol into a lower layer protocol. To set up a WAN connection to the Internet, you need to use the same encapsulation method used by your ISP (Internet Service Provider). If your ISP offers a dial-up Internet connection using PPPoE (PPP over Ethernet) or PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol), they should also provide a username and password (and service name) for user authentication.

WAN IP Address

The WAN IP address is an IP address for the NBG5715, which makes it accessible from an outside network. It is used by the NBG5715 to communicate with other devices in other networks. It can be static (fixed) or dynamically assigned by the ISP each time the NBG5715 tries to access the Internet.

If your ISP assigns you a static WAN IP address, they should also assign you the subnet mask and DNS server IP address(es) (and a gateway IP address if you use the Ethernet or ENET ENCAP encapsulation method).

DNS Server Address Assignment

Use Domain Name System (DNS) to map a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa, for instance, the IP address of www.zyxel.com is 204.217.0.2. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a computer before you can access it.

The NBG5715 can get the DNS server addresses in the following ways.

- 1 The ISP tells you the DNS server addresses, usually in the form of an information sheet, when you sign up. If your ISP gives you DNS server addresses, manually enter them in the DNS server fields.
- 2 If your ISP dynamically assigns the DNS server IP addresses (along with the NBG5715's WAN IP address), set the DNS server fields to get the DNS server address from the ISP.

WAN MAC Address

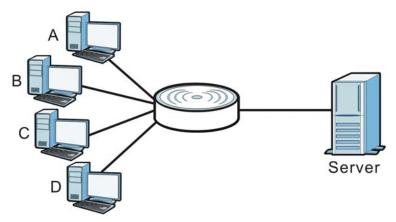
The MAC address screen allows users to configure the WAN port's MAC address by either using the factory default or cloning the MAC address from a computer on your LAN. Choose **Factory Default** to select the factory assigned default MAC Address.

Otherwise, click **Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address** and enter the IP address of the computer on the LAN whose MAC you are cloning. Once it is successfully configured, the address will be copied to configuration file. It is recommended that you clone the MAC address prior to hooking up the WAN Port.

10.3.2 Multicast

Traditionally, IP packets are transmitted in one of either two ways - Unicast (1 sender - 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender - everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to a group of hosts on the network - not everybody and not just 1.





In the multicast example above, systems A and D comprise one multicast group. In multicasting, the server only needs to send one data stream and this is delivered to systems A and D.

IGMP (Internet Group Multicast Protocol) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. The NBG5715 supports both IGMP version 1 (IGMP-v1) and IGMP version 2 (IGMP-v2).

At start up, the NBG5715 queries all directly connected networks to gather group membership. After that, the NBG5715 periodically updates this information. IP multicasting can be enabled/ disabled on the NBG5715 LAN and/or WAN interfaces in the Web Configurator (LAN; WAN). Select **None** to disable IP multicasting on these interfaces.

10.4 The Broadband Screen

Use this screen to change your NBG5715's Internet access settings. Click **Configuration** > **Network** > **WAN** to open the **Broadband** screen. The screen differs according to the encapsulation you choose.

10.4.1 Ethernet Encapsulation

This screen displays when you select **ENET ENCAP** (Ethernet encapsulation).

gure 39 Network > WAN > Broad	
ISP Parameters for Internet Access	
Encapsulation :	ENET ENCAP 💌
IP Address	
Obtain an IP Address Automatically	
 Static IP Address 	
IP Address :	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask :	0.0.0.0
Gateway IP address :	0.0.0.0
DNS server	
First DNS Server :	UserDefined 0.0.0.0
Second DNS Server :	UserDefined 0.0.0.0
Third DNS Server :	UserDefined 0.0.0
	Apply Cancel

Figure 39 Network > WAN > Broadband: ENET ENCAP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
ISP Parameters for Internet Access		
Encapsulation	Choose the ENET ENCAP (Ethernet encapsulation) option when the WAN port is used as a regular Ethernet.	
Obtain an IP Address Automatically	Select this option If your ISP did not assign you a fixed IP address. This is the default selection.	
Static IP Address	Select this option If the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.	
IP Address	Enter your WAN IP address in this field if you selected Static IP Address.	
Subnet Mask	Enter the Subnet Mask in this field.	
Gateway IP Address	Enter a Gateway IP Address (if your ISP gave you one) in this field.	
First DNS Server Second DNS Server	Select Obtained From ISP if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the NBG5715's WAN IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the ISP assigns. Select User-Defined if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose User-Defined , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, User-Defined changes to None after you	
	click Apply . If you set a second choice to User-Defined , and enter the same IP address, the second User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply .	
	Select None if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a computer in order to access it.	
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.	
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.	

 Table 24
 Network > WAN > Broadband: ENET ENCAP

10.4.2 PPPoE Encapsulation

The NBG5715 supports PPPoE (Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet). PPPoE is an IETF standard (RFC 2516) specifying how a personal computer (PC) interacts with a broadband modem (DSL, cable, wireless, etc.) connection. The **PPP over Ethernet** option is for a dial-up connection using PPPoE.

For the service provider, PPPoE offers an access and authentication method that works with existing access control systems (for example Radius).

One of the benefits of PPPoE is the ability to let you access one of multiple network services, a function known as dynamic service selection. This enables the service provider to easily create and offer new IP services for individuals.

Operationally, PPPoE saves significant effort for both you and the ISP or carrier, as it requires no specific configuration of the broadband modem at the customer site.

By implementing PPPoE directly on the NBG5715 (rather than individual computers), the computers on the LAN do not need PPPoE software installed, since the NBG5715 does that part of the task. Furthermore, with NAT, all of the LANs' computers will have access.

This screen displays when you select **PPPoE** encapsulation.

Figure 40	Network >	> WAN >	> Broadband:	PPPoE
-----------	-----------	---------	--------------	-------

Broadband	Advanced		
	meters for Internet Access		
Encapsul	lation :	PPPoE	
PPP Infor	rmation		
PPP Use	mame :		
PPP Pas:	sword :		
PPP Auto	Connect :		
IDLE Tim	eout [seconds]:	300	
PPPoE S	ervice Name :		
WAN IP A	ddress Assignment		
ΘG	et automatically from ISP		
OU	se Fixed IP Address		
Му	WAN IP Address :		
DNS serv	rer		
First DNS	Server :	Obtained From ISP 💌	
Second D	INS Server :	Obtained From ISP 💌	
Third DN:	S Server :	Obtained From ISP 💌	
		Apply Cancel	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
ISP Parameters fo	ISP Parameters for Internet Access		
Encapsulation	Select PPPoE if you connect to your Internet via dial-up.		
PPP Information	•		
PPP Username	Type the user name given to you by your ISP.		
PPP Password	Type the password associated with the user name above.		
PPP Auto Connect	Select this option if you do not want the connection to time out.		
IDLE Timeout	This value specifies the time in minutes that elapses before the router automatically disconnects from the PPPoE server.		
PPPoE Service Name	Enter the name of your PPPoE service here.		
WAN IP Address A	ssignment		
Get automatically from ISP	Select this option If your ISP did not assign you a fixed IP address. This is the default selection.		
Use Fixed IP Address	Select this option If the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.		
My WAN IP Address	Enter your WAN IP address in this field if you selected Use Fixed IP Address .		
DNS Server			
First DNS Server Second DNS Server	Select From ISP if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the NBG5715's WAN IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the ISP assigns.		
	Select User-Defined if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose User-Defined , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . If you set a second choice to User-Defined , and enter the same IP address, the second User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply .		
	Select None if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a computer in order to access it.		
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.		
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

Table 25Network > WAN > Broadband: PPPoE

10.5 The Advanced Screen

To change your NBG5715's advanced WAN settings, click **Network** > **WAN** > **Advanced**. The screen appears as shown. You can use this screen to enable multicast.

Figure 41 Network > WAN > Advanced

Broadband Advanced	
Multicast Setup	
Multicast Setup :	None
	Apply Cancel

Table 26Network > WAN > Advance

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Multicast Setup	Select $IGMPv1/v2$ to enable multicasting. This applies to traffic routed from the WAN to the LAN.
	Select None to disable this feature. This may cause incoming traffic to be dropped or sent to all connected network devices.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

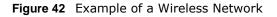
Wireless LAN

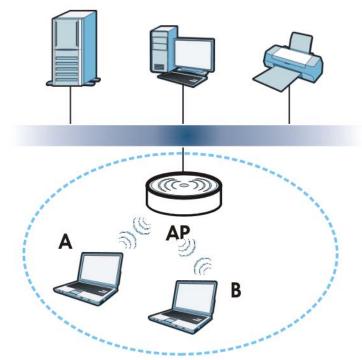
11.1 Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure the wireless network settings in your NBG5715. The NBG5715 is able to function both 2.4G and 5G network at the same time. You can have different wireless settings for 2.4G and 5G. Click **Configuration > Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G** or **Wireless LAN 5G** to configure to do so.

See the appendices for more detailed information about wireless networks.

The following figure provides an example of a wireless network.





The wireless network is the part in the blue circle. In this wireless network, devices A and B are called wireless clients. The wireless clients use the access point (AP) to interact with other devices (such as the printer) or with the Internet. Your NBG5715 is the AP.

11.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **General** screen to enable or disable wireless LAN, configure SSID, operating channel, and wireless security (Section 11.2 on page 79).
- Use the MAC Filter screen to allow or deny wireless stations based on their MAC addresses from connecting to the NBG5715 (Section 11.4 on page 85).
- Use the **Advanced** screen to allow intra-BSS networking and set the RTS/CTS Threshold (Section 11.5 on page 86).
- Use the **QoS** screen to ensure Quality of Service (QoS) in your wireless network (Section 11.6 on page 87).
- Use the **WPS** screen to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually (Section 11.7 on page 87).
- Use the WPS Station screen to add a wireless station using WPS (Section 11.8 on page 89).
- Use the **Scheduling** screen to set the times your wireless LAN is turned on and off (Section 11.9 on page 89).

11.1.2 What You Should Know

Every wireless network must follow these basic guidelines.

• Every wireless client in the same wireless network must use the same SSID.

The SSID is the name of the wireless network. It stands for Service Set IDentity.

• If two wireless networks overlap, they should use different channels.

Like radio stations or television channels, each wireless network uses a specific channel, or frequency, to send and receive information.

• Every wireless client in the same wireless network must use security compatible with the AP. Security stops unauthorized devices from using the wireless network. It can also protect the information that is sent in the wireless network.

Wireless Security Overview

The following sections introduce different types of wireless security you can set up in the wireless network.

SSID

Normally, the AP acts like a beacon and regularly broadcasts the SSID in the area. You can hide the SSID instead, in which case the AP does not broadcast the SSID. In addition, you should change the default SSID to something that is difficult to guess.

This type of security is fairly weak, however, because there are ways for unauthorized devices to get the SSID. In addition, unauthorized devices can still see the information that is sent in the wireless network.

MAC Address Filter

Every wireless client has a unique identification number, called a MAC address.¹ A MAC address is usually written using twelve hexadecimal characters²; for example, 00A0C5000002 or

00:A0:C5:00:00:02. To get the MAC address for each wireless client, see the appropriate User's Guide or other documentation.

You can use the MAC address filter to tell the AP which wireless clients are allowed or not allowed to use the wireless network. If a wireless client is allowed to use the wireless network, it still has to have the correct settings (SSID, channel, and security). If a wireless client is not allowed to use the wireless network, it does not matter if it has the correct settings.

This type of security does not protect the information that is sent in the wireless network. Furthermore, there are ways for unauthorized devices to get the MAC address of an authorized wireless client. Then, they can use that MAC address to use the wireless network.

User Authentication

You can make every user log in to the wireless network before they can use it. This is called user authentication. However, every wireless client in the wireless network has to support IEEE 802.1x to do this.

For wireless networks, there are two typical places to store the user names and passwords for each user.

- In the AP: this feature is called a local user database or a local database.
- In a RADIUS server: this is a server used in businesses more than in homes.

If your AP does not provide a local user database and if you do not have a RADIUS server, you cannot set up user names and passwords for your users.

Unauthorized devices can still see the information that is sent in the wireless network, even if they cannot use the wireless network. Furthermore, there are ways for unauthorized wireless users to get a valid user name and password. Then, they can use that user name and password to use the wireless network.

Local user databases also have an additional limitation that is explained in the next section.

Encryption

Wireless networks can use encryption to protect the information that is sent in the wireless network. Encryption is like a secret code. If you do not know the secret code, you cannot understand the message.

^{1.} Some wireless devices, such as scanners, can detect wireless networks but cannot use wireless networks. These kinds of wireless devices might not have MAC addresses.

^{2.} Hexadecimal characters are 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, B, C, D, E, and F.

The types of encryption you can choose depend on the type of user authentication. (See page 77 for information about this.)

	NO AUTHENTICATION	RADIUS SERVER
Weakest	No Security	WPA
	Static WEP	
↓	WPA-PSK	
Strongest	WPA2-PSK	WPA2

Table 27 Types of Encryption for Each Type of Authentication

For example, if the wireless network has a RADIUS server, you can choose **WPA** or **WPA2**. If users do not log in to the wireless network, you can choose no encryption, **Static WEP**, **WPA-PSK**, or **WPA2-PSK**.

Usually, you should set up the strongest encryption that every wireless client in the wireless network supports. For example, suppose the AP does not have a local user database, and you do not have a RADIUS server. Therefore, there is no user authentication. Suppose the wireless network has two wireless clients. Device A only supports WEP, and device B supports WEP and WPA. Therefore, you should set up **Static WEP** in the wireless network.

- Note: It is recommended that wireless networks use **WPA-PSK**, **WPA**, or stronger encryption. IEEE 802.1x and WEP encryption are better than none at all, but it is still possible for unauthorized devices to figure out the original information pretty quickly.
- Note: It is not possible to use **WPA-PSK**, **WPA** or stronger encryption with a local user database. In this case, it is better to set up stronger encryption with no authentication than to set up weaker encryption with the local user database.

When you select **WPA2** or **WPA2-PSK** in your NBG5715, you can also select an option (**WPA Compatible**) to support WPA as well. In this case, if some wireless clients support WPA and some support WPA2, you should set up **WPA2-PSK** or **WPA2** (depending on the type of wireless network login) and select the **WPA Compatible** option in the NBG5715.

Many types of encryption use a key to protect the information in the wireless network. The longer the key, the stronger the encryption. Every wireless client in the wireless network must have the same key.

WPS

WiFi Protected Setup (WPS) is an industry standard specification, defined by the WiFi Alliance. WPS allows you to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually. Depending on the devices in your network, you can either press a button (on the device itself, or in its configuration utility) or enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) in the devices. Then, they connect and set up a secure network by themselves. See how to set up a secure wireless network using WPS in the Section 9.2 on page 57.

WDS

Wireless Distribution System or WDS security is used between bridged APs. It is independent of the security between the wired networks and their respective APs. If you do not enable WDS security,

traffic between APs is not encrypted. When WDS security is enabled, both APs must use the same pre-shared key.

11.2 The General Wireless LAN Screen

Use this screen to configure the SSIDs of the wireless LAN.

Note: If you are configuring the NBG5715 from a computer connected to the wireless LAN and you change the NBG5715's SSID, channel or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press **Apply** to confirm. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the NBG5715's new settings.

Click Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G to open the General screen.

|--|

General	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS	WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling	
	less Setup						
Wire	ess LAN :						● Enable ○ Disable
Nam	e(SSID):						test2
Пн	ide SSID						
Ch	annel Selectio	on :					Channel-01 2412MHz 💌 🗖 Auto Channel Selection
Op	erating Chanr	nel:					Channel-1
Ch	annel Width :						40 MHz
Wir	eless Mode :						802.11bgn 💌
Secu	ırity						
Secu	rity Mode :						No Security
N	ote: WPA- <mark>P</mark> SI	Kand WPA2-F	PSK car	be conf	igured when WI	S enabled	
							Apply Cancel

The following table describes the general wireless LAN labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Wireless LAN	Select $\ensuremath{\textbf{Enable}}$ to activate the 2.4G and/or 5G wireless LAN. Select $\ensuremath{\textbf{Disable}}$ to turn it off.		
Name(SSID)	The SSID (Service Set IDentity) identifies the Service Set with which a wireless client is associated. Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable characters found on a typical English language keyboard) for the wireless LAN.		
Hide SSID	Select this check box to hide the SSID in the outgoing beacon frame so a station cannot obtain the SSID through scanning using a site survey tool.		
Channel Selection	Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region. Select a channel from the drop-down list box. The options vary depending on the frequency band and the country you are in. This option is only available if Auto Channel Selection is disabled.		
Auto Channel Selection	Select this check box for the NBG5715 to automatically choose the channel with the least interference. Deselect this check box if you wish to manually select the channel using the Channel Section field.		

 Table 28
 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Operating Channel	This displays the channel the NBG5715 is currently using.
Channel Width	Select the wireless channel width used by NBG5715.
	A standard MHz channel offers transfer speeds of up to 216.7 Mbps whereas a 40MHz channel uses two standard channels and offers speeds of up to 450 Mbps.
	Because not all devices support 40 MHz channels, select Auto /40MHz to allow the NBG5715 to adjust the channel bandwidth automatically.
	Select MHz to lessen radio interference with other wireless devices in your neighborhood.
Wireless Mode	If you are in the Wireless LAN 2.4G > General screen, you can select from the following:
	• 802.11b : allows either IEEE 802.11b or IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the NBG5715. In this mode, all wireless devices can only transmit at the data rates supported by IEEE 802.11b.
	• 802.11g : allows IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Device. IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices can associate with the NBG5715 only when they use the short preamble type.
	• 802.11bg : allows either IEEE 802.11b or IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the NBG5715. The NBG5715 adjusts the transmission rate automatically according to the wireless standard supported by the wireless devices.
	• 802.11n : allows IEEE 802.11n compliant WLAN devices to associate with the NBG5715. This can increase transmission rates, although IEEE 802.11b or IEEE 802.11g clients will not be able to connect to the NBG5715. I
	• 802.11gn : allows either IEEE 802.11g or IEEE 802.11n compliant WLAN devices to associate with the NBG5715. The transmission rate of your NBG5715 might be reduced.
	• 802.11 bgn : allows IEEE802.11b, IEEE802.11g and IEEE802.11n compliant WLAN devices to associate with the NBG5715. The transmission rate of your NBG5715 might be reduced.
	If you are in the Wireless LAN 5G > General screen, you can select from the following:
	• 802.11a : allows only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the NBG5715.
	 802.11an: allows both IEEE802.11n and IEEE802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the NBG5715. The transmission rate of your NBG5715 might be reduced.
Security Mode	Select Static WEP, WPA-PSK, WPA, WPA2-PSK or WPA2 to add security on this wireless network. The wireless clients which want to associate to this network must have same wireless security settings as this device. After you select to use a security, additional options appears in this screen. See Section 11.3 on page 81 for detailed information on different security modes. Or you can select No Security to allow any client to associate this network without authentication.
	Note: If the WPS function is enabled (default), only No Security , WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK are available in this field.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

 Table 28
 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > General (continued)

See the rest of this chapter for information on the other labels in this screen.

11.3 Wireless Security Modes

11.3.1 No Security

Select **No Security** to allow wireless clients to communicate with the access points without any data encryption.

Note: If you do not enable any wireless security on your NBG5715, your network is accessible to any wireless networking device that is within range.

Figure 44 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > Security: No Security

Security Security Mode :	No Security
Note: WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK can be confi	gured when WPS enabled
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 29 Network > Wireless LAN > Security: No Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Mode	Choose No Security from the drop-down list box.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

11.3.2 WEP Encryption

WEP encryption scrambles the data transmitted between the wireless stations and the access points to keep network communications private. It encrypts unicast and multicast communications in a network. Both the wireless stations and the access points must use the same WEP key.

Your NBG5715 allows you to configure up to four 64-bit or 128-bit WEP keys but only one key can be enabled at any one time.

Select Static WEP from the Security Mode list.

Security		
Security Mode :		Static WEP
PassPhrase :		abcde Generate
WEP Encryption :		64-bits
Authentication Method :		Auto
Note:		
	SCIECDARACTERS OF 10 Dexad	ecimal characters ("0.9", "A.F") for each Key (1.4).
128-bit WEP: Enter 1		ecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4). adecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4). vireless data transmission.)
128-bit WEP: Enter 1	3 ASCII characters or 26 hexa as an active key to encrypt v	adecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).
128-bit WEP: Enter 1 (Select one WEP key	3 ASCII characters or 26 hex as an active key to encrypt v	adecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).
128-bit WEP: Enter 1: (Select one WEP key	3 ASCII characters or 26 hex. as an active key to encrypt v • ASCII • Hex 11111	adecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).
128-bit WEP: Enter 1 (Select one WEP key © Key 1 © Key 2	3 ASCII characters or 26 hex. as an active key to encrypt v ASCII C Hex 11111 22222	adecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).
128-bit WEP: Enter 1 (Select one WEP key © Key 1 © Key 2 © Key 3 © Key 4	3 ASCII characters or 26 hex. as an active key to encrypt v ASCII O Hex 11111 22222 33333	adecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4). vireless data transmission.)
128-bit WEP: Enter 1 (Select one WEP key © Key 1 © Key 2 © Key 3 © Key 4	3 ASCII characters or 26 hex. as an active key to encrypt v ASCII O Hex 11111 22222 33333 44444	adecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4). vireless data transmission.)

Figure 45 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > Security: Static WEP

The following table describes the wireless LAN security labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Security Mode	Select Static WEP to enable data encryption.		
PassPhrase	Enter a Passphrase (up to 26 printable characters) and click Generate.		
	A passphrase functions like a password. In WEP security mode, it is further converted by the NBG5715 into a complicated string that is referred to as the "key". This key is requested from all devices wishing to connect to a wireless network.		
WEP Encryption	Select 64-bits or 128-bits.		
	This dictates the length of the security key that the network is going to use.		
Authentication	Select Auto or Shared Key from the drop-down list box.		
Method	This field specifies whether the wireless clients have to provide the WEP key to login to the wireless client. Keep this setting at Auto unless you want to force a key verification before communication between the wireless client and the NBG5715 occurs.		
	Select Shared Key to force the clients to provide the WEP key prior to communication.		
ASCII	Select this option in order to enter ASCII characters as WEP key.		
Hex	Select this option in order to enter hexadecimal characters as a WEP key.		
	The preceding "0x", that identifies a hexadecimal key, is entered automatically.		

 Table 30
 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > Security: Static WEP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Key 1 to Key 4	The WEP keys are used to encrypt data. Both the NBG5715 and the wireless stations must use the same WEP key for data transmission.
	If you chose 64-bit WEP , then enter any 5 ASCII characters or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F").
	If you chose 128-bit WEP , then enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F").
	You must configure at least one key, only one key can be activated at any one time. The default key is key 1.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

Table 30 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > Security: Static WEP (continued)

11.3.3 WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK

Select WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK from the Security Mode list.

Figure 46 Network > Wireless LAN > Security: WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK

Security Security Mode :	WPA2-PSK
WPA Compatible Pre-Shared Key	ThisismyWPA-PSKpre-shared
Group Key Update Timer	3600 seconds
Note: WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK can be	configured when WPS enabled
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 31 Network > Wireless LAN > Security: WPA-PSK/WPA2
--

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Mode	Select WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK to enable data encryption.
WPA Compatible	This field appears when you choose WPA2-PSK as the Security Mode .
	Check this field to allow wireless devices using WPA-PSK security mode to connect to your NBG5715.
Pre-Shared Key	WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK uses a simple common password for authentication.
	Type a pre-shared key from 8 to 63 case-sensitive keyboard characters.
Group Key Update Timer	The Group Key Update Timer is the rate at which the AP sends a new group key out to all clients.
	The default is 3600 seconds (60 minutes).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

11.3.4 WPA/WPA2

Select WPA or WPA2 from the Security Mode list.

Security	
Security Mode :	WPA2
UWPA Compatible	
Group Key Update Timer	3600 seconds
PMK Cache Period	10 seconds
Pre-Authentication	C Enable © Disable
Authentication Server	
IP Address	192.168.2.3
Port Number	1812
Shared Secret	12345678
Session Timeout	0
Note: WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK can b	e configured when WPS enabled
	Apply Cancel

Figure 47 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > General: WPA/WPA2

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Mode	Select WPA or WPA2 to enable data encryption.
WPA Compatible	This check box is available only when you select WPA2-PSK or WPA2 in the Security Mode field.
	Select the check box to have both WPA2 and WPA wireless clients be able to communicate with the NBG5715 even when the NBG5715 is using WPA2-PSK or WPA2.
Group Key Update Timer	The Group Key Update Timer is the rate at which the AP (if using WPA- PSK/WPA2-PSK key management) or RADIUS server (if using WPA/WPA2 key management) sends a new group key out to all clients. The re-keying process is the WPA/WPA2 equivalent of automatically changing the WEP key for an AP and all stations in a WLAN on a periodic basis. Setting of the Group Key Update Timer is also supported in WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK mode.
PMK Cache Period	This field is available only when you select WPA2.
	Specify how often wireless clients have to resend usernames and passwords in order to stay connected. Enter a time interval between 10 and 999999 minutes.
	Note: If wireless client authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.
Pre-Authentication	This field is available only when you select WPA2.
	Pre-authentication enables fast roaming by allowing the wireless client (already connecting to an AP) to perform IEEE 802.1x authentication with another AP before connecting to it. Select Enable to turn on preauthentication in WAP2. Otherwise, select Disable .
Authentication Serve	er
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the external authentication server in dotted decimal notation.
Port Number	Enter the port number of the external authentication server.
	You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so with additional information.

Table 32 N	letwork >	Wireless	LAN >	General:	WPA/WPA2
------------	-----------	----------	-------	----------	----------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Shared Secret	Enter a password (up to 127 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external authentication server and the NBG5715.
	The key must be the same on the external authentication server and your NBG5715. The key is not sent over the network.
Session Timeout	The NBG5715 automatically disconnects a wireless client from the wireless and wired networks after a period of inactivity. The wireless client needs to send the username and password again before it can use the wireless and wired networks again. Some wireless clients may prompt users for a username and password; other clients may use saved login credentials. In either case, there is usually a short delay while the wireless client logs in to the wireless network again. Enter the time in seconds from 0 to 999999.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Reset	Click Reset to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

Table 32 Network > Wireless LAN > General: WPA/WPA2 (continued)

11.4 The MAC Filter Screen

The MAC filter screen allows you to configure the NBG5715 to give exclusive access to devices (**Allow**) or exclude devices from accessing the NBG5715 (**Deny**). Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. You need to know the MAC address of the devices to configure this screen.

To change your NBG5715's MAC filter settings, click **Network** > **Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G** > **MAC Filter**. The screen appears as shown.

C Address	Filter :	C Enable C Disable			
er Action :					
IAC Filter	Summary				
Set	MAC Address		Set	MAC Address	
1	00:00:00:00:00		17	00:00:00:00:00	
2	00:00:00:00:00		18	00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00	
4	00:00:00:00:00:00		20	00:00:00:00:00	
5	00:00:00:00:00		21	00:00:00:00:00	
6	00:00:00:00:00:00		22	00:00:00:00:00	
7	00:00:00:00:00:00		23	00:00:00:00:00	
8	00:00:00:00:00:00		24	00:00:00:00:00	
9	00:00:00:00:00:00		25	00:00:00:00:00	
10	00:00:00:00:00:00		26	00:00:00:00:00	
11	00:00:00:00:00:00		27	00:00:00:00:00	
12	00:00:00:00:00:00		28	00:00:00:00:00	
13	00:00:00:00:00:00		29	00:00:00:00:00	
14	00:00:00:00:00:00		30	00:00:00:00:00	
15	00:00:00:00:00:00		31	00:00:00:00:00	
16	00:00:00:00:00:00		32	00:00:00:00:00	

Figure 48 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > MAC Filter

The following table describes the labels in this menu.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC Address Filter	Select to turn on (Enable) or off (Disable) MAC address filtering.
Filter Action	Define the filter action for the list of MAC addresses in the MAC Filter Summary table. This field is configurable only when you select Enable in the MAC Address Filter field.
	Select Allow to permit access to the NBG5715, MAC addresses not listed will be denied access to the NBG5715.
	Select Deny to block access to the NBG5715, MAC addresses not listed will be allowed to access the NBG5715.
MAC Filter Sun	nmary
Set	This is the index number of the MAC address.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the wireless station that are allowed or denied access to the NBG5715.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

Table 33 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > MAC Filter

11.5 The Wireless LAN Advanced Screen

Use this screen to allow wireless advanced features, such as the output power, RTS/CTS Threshold and high-throughput physical mode settings.

Click **Network** > **Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G** > **Advanced**. The screen appears as shown.

eneral	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling	
Wirele	ess Advanced	Setup				
RTS/C	TS Threshold	:		234	45	(256~2346)
Fragmentation Threshold :			234	2344 (256 ~ 2346)		
Intra-E	ISS Traffic :			С	Enable 🖲 Dis	sable
advan	ce tx power :			10	0% -	

Notwork > Wireless IAN 2 4C/EC > Adv

Table 34 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
RTS/CTS Threshold	Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear To Send) handshake.
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Intra-BSS Traffic	A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless clients or between a wireless client and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).
	Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless clients in the BSS. When Intra-BSS is enabled, wireless clients can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS is disabled, wireless clients can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.
advance tx power	Set the output power of the NBG5715 in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the NBG5715 to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following 100% , 90% , 75% , 50% , 25% or 10% . See the product specifications for more information on your NBG5715's output power.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

Table 34 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > Advanced (continued)

11.6 The QoS Screen

The QoS (Quality of Service) screen allows you to automatically give a service (such as VoIP and video) a priority level.

Click Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > QoS. The following screen appears.

Figure 50 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > QoS

<u> </u>	
General MAC Filter	Advanced QoS WPS WPS Station Scheduling
WMM QoS :	C Enable 💿 Disable
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

 Table 35
 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > QoS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable WMM QoS	Check this to have the NBG5715 automatically give a service a priority level according to the ToS value in the IP header of packets it sends. WMM QoS (Wifi MultiMedia Quality of Service) gives high priority to voice and video, which makes them run more smoothly.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

11.7 The WPS Screen

Use this screen to enable/disable WPS, view or generate a new PIN number and check current WPS status. To open this screen, click **Network** > **Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G** > **WPS** tab.

Note: With WPS, wireless clients can only connect to the wireless network using the first SSID on the NBG5715.

General	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS	WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling
WPS	Setup					
WPS					O	Enable C Disable
PIN N	umber : 93687	928			G	Senerate
					3. 	
WPS	Status					
Status	3.:				Und	configured Release Configuration
802.1	1 Mode :					
SSID	:					
Secur	ity :					
No	te:					
I	you enable W	PS, the UPnP	service	e will be	turned on autor	natically.
	·					
						Apply Cancel

Figure 51 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > WPS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
WPS Setup		
WPS	Select Enable to activate the WPS feature. Select Disable to turn it off.	
PIN Number	This displays a PIN number last time system generated. Click Generate to generate a new PIN number.	
WPS Status	· ·	
Status	This displays Configured when the NBG5715 has connected to a wireless network using WPS or when Enable WPS is selected and wireless or wireless security settings have been changed. The current wireless and wireless security settings also appear in the screen.	
	This displays Unconfigured if WPS is disabled and there are no wireless or wireless security changes on the NBG5715 or you click Release_Configuration to remove the configured wireless and wireless security settings.	
Release	This button is only available when the WPS status displays Configured .	
Configuration	Click this button to remove all configured wireless and wireless security settings for WPS connections on the NBG5715.	
802.11 Mode	This is the 802.11 mode used. Only compliant WLAN devices can associate w the NBG5715.	
SSID	This is the name of the wireless network (the NBG5715's first SSID).	
Security	This is the type of wireless security employed by the network.	
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.	
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.	

Table 36 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > WPS

11.8 The WPS Station Screen

Use this screen when you want to add a wireless station using WPS. To open this screen, click **Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > WPS Station** tab.

Note: After you click **Push Button** on this screen, you have to press a similar button in the wireless station utility within 2 minutes. To add the second wireless station, you have to press these buttons on both device and the wireless station again after the first 2 minutes.

Figure 52 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > WPS Station

General	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS WPS	S WPS Station	Scheduling
Click t	he below Pus	h Button to ad	d WPS station	is to wireless netw	vork. Push Button
Or inp	ut station's PII	N number :		Start	
No	te:				
1	The Push Bu	tton Configur	ation requires	pressing a butto	n on both the station and AP within 120 seconds.
			Contraction of the second s		
2.	. You may find	I the PIN num	be <mark>r in the stat</mark>	ion's utility.	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Push Button	Use this button when you use the PBC (Push Button Configuration) method to configure wireless stations's wireless settings. See Section 9.2.1 on page 57.
	Click this to start WPS-aware wireless station scanning and the wireless security information synchronization.
Or input station's PIN number	Use this button when you use the PIN Configuration method to configure wireless station's wireless settings. See Section 9.2.2 on page 59.
	Type the same PIN number generated in the wireless station's utility. Then click Start to associate to each other and perform the wireless security information synchronization.

 Table 37
 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > WPS Station

11.9 The Scheduling Screen

Use this screen to set the times your wireless LAN is turned on and off. Wireless LAN scheduling is disabled by default. The wireless LAN can be scheduled to turn on or off on certain days and at certain times. To open this screen, click **Network** > **Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G** > **Scheduling** tab.

WLAN status	Day	Except for the following times (24-Hour Format)
C on ⊙ off	Everyday	$00 \bullet (hour) 00 \bullet (min) \sim 00 \bullet (hour) 00 \bullet (min)$
C On ☉ Off	□ Mon	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
C on ⊕ off	Tue	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
○ on ⊙ Off	□ Wed	00 💌 (hour) 00 💌 (min) ~ 00 💌 (hour) 00 💌 (min)
C on ⊙ Off	🗖 Thu	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
○ On ⓒ Off	🗖 Fri	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
O on ⊙ off	Sat Sat	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
C On ☉ Off	🗖 Sun	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)

Figure 53 Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > Scheduling

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless LAN Scheduling	Select Enable to activate the scheduling feature. Select Disable to turn it off.
Scheduling	
WLAN Status	Select On or Off to specify whether the Wireless LAN is turned on or off. This field works in conjunction with the Day and For the following times fields.
Day	Select Everyday or the specific days to turn the Wireless LAN on or off. If you select Everyday you can not select any specific days. This field works in conjunction with the For the following times field.
Except for the following times (24-Hour Format)	Select a begin time using the first set of hour and minute (min) drop down boxes and select an end time using the second set of hour and minute (min) drop down boxes. If you have chosen On earlier for the WLAN Status the Wireless LAN will turn on between the two times you enter in these fields. If you have chosen Off earlier for the WLAN Status the Wireless LAN will turn off between the two times you enter in these fields.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

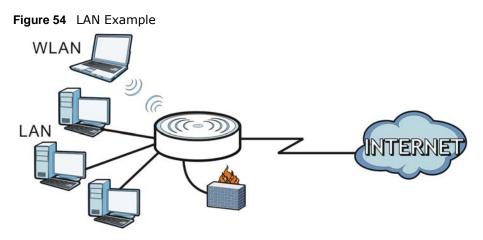
Table 38	Network >	Wireless	LAN 2.4G/5G >	Scheduling
----------	-----------	----------	---------------	------------

LAN

12.1 Overview

This chapter describes how to configure LAN settings.

A Local Area Network (LAN) is a shared communication system to which many computers are attached. A LAN is a computer network limited to the immediate area, usually the same building or floor of a building. The LAN screens can help you configure a LAN DHCP server, manage IP addresses, and partition your physical network into logical networks.



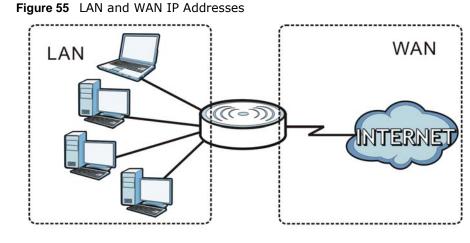
The LAN screens can help you manage IP addresses.

12.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the IP screen to change the IP address for your NBG5715 (Section 12.4 on page 92).
- Use the **IP Alias** screen to have the NBG5715 apply IP alias to create LAN subnets (Section 12.5 on page 93).

12.3 What You Need To Know

The actual physical connection determines whether the NBG5715 ports are LAN or WAN ports. There are two separate IP networks, one inside the LAN network and the other outside the WAN network as shown next.



The LAN parameters of the NBG5715 are preset in the factory with the following values:

- IP address of 192.168.1.1 with subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 (24 bits)
- DHCP server enabled with 32 client IP addresses starting from 192.168.1.33.

These parameters should work for the majority of installations. If your ISP gives you explicit DNS server address(es), read the embedded Web Configurator help regarding what fields need to be configured.

12.3.1 IP Pool Setup

The NBG5715 is pre-configured with a pool of 32 IP addresses starting from 192.168.1.33 to 192.168.1.64. This configuration leaves 31 IP addresses (excluding the NBG5715 itself) in the lower range (192.168.1.2 to 192.168.1.32) for other server computers, for instance, servers for mail, FTP, TFTP, web, etc., that you may have.

12.3.2 LAN TCP/IP

The NBG5715 has built-in DHCP server capability that assigns IP addresses and DNS servers to systems that support DHCP client capability.

12.4 The LAN IP Screen

Use this screen to change the IP address for your NBG5715. Click Network > LAN > IP.

Figure 56 Network > LAN > IP	
IP IP Alias	
IP Address : IP Subnet Mask :	192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 33 Network > EAN > 11			
LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
IP Address	Type the IP address of your NBG5715 in dotted decimal notation.		
IP Subnet Mask	The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your NBG5715 will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IP address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use the subnet mask computed by the NBG5715.		
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.		
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

Table 39 Network > I AN > IP

12.5 The IP Alias Screen

IP alias allows you to partition a physical network into different logical networks over the same Ethernet interface. The NBG5715 supports three logical LAN interfaces via its single physical Ethernet interface with the NBG5715 itself as the gateway for each LAN network.

To change your NBG5715's IP alias settings, click **Network > LAN** > **IP Alias**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 57 Network > LAN > IF Allas	
IP IP Alias	
IP Alias 1 IP Alias 1 IP Address : IP Subnet Mask :	0.0.0.0
IP Alias 2 IP Alias 2 IP Address : IP Subnet Mask :	0.0.0.0
	Apply Cancel

Figure 57 Network > LAN > IP Alias

Table 40	Network >	LAN >	· IP Alias
----------	-----------	-------	------------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Alias 1, 2	Select the check box to configure another LAN network for the NBG5715.
IP Address	Type the IP alias address of your NBG5715 in dotted decimal notation.
IP Subnet Mask	The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your NBG5715 will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IP address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use the subnet mask computed by the NBG5715.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

DHCP Server

13.1 Overview

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual clients to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the NBG5715's LAN as a DHCP server or disable it. When configured as a server, the NBG5715 provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If DHCP service is disabled, you must have another DHCP server on your LAN, or else the computer must be manually configured.

13.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the General screen to enable the DHCP server (Section 13.2 on page 95).
- Use the **Advanced** screen to assign IP addresses on the LAN to specific individual computers based on their MAC Addresses (Section 13.3 on page 96).
- Use the **Client List** screen to view the current DHCP client information (Section 13.4 on page 97).

13.1.2 What You Need To Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read through this chapter.

MAC Addresses

Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. Find out the MAC addresses of your network devices if you intend to add them to the **DHCP Client List** screen.

13.2 The DHCP Server General Screen

Use this screen to enable the DHCP server. Click **Network** > **DHCP Server**. The following screen displays.

Figure 58	Network >	DHCP	Server	>	General	l
-----------	-----------	------	--------	---	---------	---

General Advanced Client List	
DHCP Server : IP Pool Starting Address : Pool Size :	© Enable © Disable 192.168.1.33 32
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DHCP Server	Select Enable to activate DHCP for LAN.
	DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual clients (computers) to obtain TCP/IP configuration at startup from a server. Enable the DHCP server unless your ISP instructs you to do otherwise. Select Disable to stop the NBG5715 acting as a DHCP server. When configured as a server, the NBG5715 provides TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If not, DHCP service is disabled and you must have another DHCP server on your LAN, or else the computers must be manually configured. When set as a server, fill in the following four fields.
IP Pool Starting Address	This field specifies the first of the contiguous addresses in the IP address pool for LAN.
Pool Size	This field specifies the size, or count of the IP address pool for LAN.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

 Table 41
 Network > DHCP Server > General

13.3 The DHCP Server Advanced Screen

This screen allows you to assign IP addresses on the LAN to specific individual computers based on their MAC addresses. You can also use this screen to configure the DNS server information that the NBG5715 sends to the DHCP clients.

To change your NBG5715's static DHCP settings, click **Network** > **DHCP Server** > **Advanced**. The following screen displays.

Static DHCP Table		
#	MAC Address	IP Address
1	00:00:00:00:00	0.0.0.0
2	00:00:00:00:00	0.0.0
3	00:00:00:00:00	0.0.0
4	00:00:00:00:00	0.0.0
5	00:00:00:00:00	0.0.0
6	00:00:00:00:00	0.0.0
7	00:00:00:00:00	0.0.0
8	00:00:00:00:00	0.0.0
IS Server NS Servers Assigned by DHC st DNS Server : cond DNS Server : ird DNS Server :	From ISP 0.0.0.0 From ISP 0.0.0.0 From ISP 0.0.0.0 From ISP 0.0.0.0	

Figure 59 Network > DHCP Server > Advanced

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Static DHCP Table	
#	This is the index number of the static IP table entry (row).
MAC Address	Type the MAC address (with colons) of a computer on your LAN.
IP Address	Type the LAN IP address of a computer on your LAN.
DNS Server	
DNS Servers Assigned by DHCP Server	The NBG5715 passes a DNS (Domain Name System) server IP address (in the order you specify here) to the DHCP clients. The NBG5715 only passes this information to the LAN DHCP clients when you select the Enable DHCP Server check box. When you clear the Enable DHCP Server check box, DHCP service is disabled and you must have another DHCP sever on your LAN, or else the computers must have their DNS server addresses manually configured.
First DNS Server Second DNS Server	Select From ISP if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the NBG5715's WAN IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the ISP assigns.
Third DNS Server	Select User-Defined if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose User-Defined , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . If you set a second choice to User-Defined , and enter the same IP address, the second User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply .
	Select DNS Relay to have the NBG5715 act as a DNS proxy. The NBG5715's LAN IP address displays in the field to the right (read-only). The NBG5715 tells the DHCP clients on the LAN that the NBG5715 itself is the DNS server. When a computer on the LAN sends a DNS query to the NBG5715, the NBG5715 forwards the query to the NBG5715's system DNS server (configured in the WAN > Internet Connection screen) and relays the response back to the computer. You can only select DNS Relay for one of the three servers; if you select DNS Relay for a second or third DNS server, that choice changes to None after you click Apply .
	Select None if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a computer in order to access it.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

 Table 42
 Network > DHCP Server > Advanced

13.4 The Client List Screen

The DHCP table shows current DHCP client information (including IP Address, Host Name and MAC Address) of network clients using the NBG5715's DHCP servers.

Configure this screen to always assign an IP address to a MAC address (and host name). Click **Network > DHCP Server > Client List**.

Note: You can also view a read-only client list by clicking the **DHCP Table (Details...)** hyperlink in the **Status** screen.

Figure 60 Network > DHCP Server > Client List

DHCP	Client Table				
#	Status	Host Name	IP Address	MAC Address	Reserve
1	9	*	192.168.1.58	00:24:21:7e:20:96	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This is the index number of the host computer.
Status	This field displays whether the connection to the host computer is up (a yellow bulb) or down (a gray bulb).
Host Name	This field displays the computer host name.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address relative to the # field listed above.
MAC Address	This field shows the MAC address of the computer with the name in the Host Name field.
	Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address which uniquely identifies a device. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02.
Reserve	Select this if you want to reserve the IP address for this specific MAC address.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Reset	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

Table 43 Network > DHCP Server > Client List

NAT

14.1 Overview

NAT (Network Address Translation - NAT, RFC 1631) is the translation of the IP address of a host in a packet. For example, the source address of an outgoing packet, used within one network is changed to a different IP address known within another network.

The figure below is a simple illustration of a NAT network. You want to assign ports 21-25 to one FTP, Telnet and SMTP server (**A** in the example), port 80 to another (**B** in the example) and assign a default server IP address of 192.168.1.35 to a third (**C** in the example).

You assign the LAN IP addresses to the devices (**A** to **D**) connected to your NBG5715. The ISP assigns the WAN IP address. The NAT network appears as a single host on the Internet. All traffic coming from **A** to **D** going out to the Internet use the IP address of the NBG5715, which is 192.168.1.1.

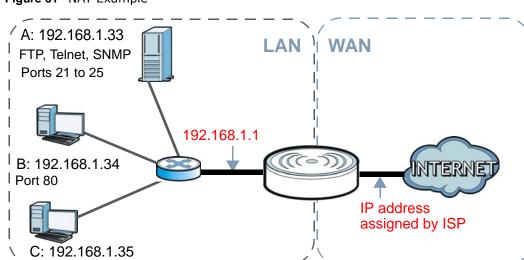


Figure 61 NAT Example

This chapter discusses how to configure NAT on the NBG5715.

Note: You must create a firewall rule in addition to setting up NAT, to allow traffic from the WAN to be forwarded through the NBG5715.

14.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the General screen to enable NAT and set a default server (Section 14.2 on page 101).
- Use the **Port Forwarding** screen to forward incoming service requests to the server(s) on your local network (Section 14.3 on page 102).

• Use the **NAT Advance** screen to change your NBG5715's trigger port settings (Section 14.4 on page 105).

14.1.2 What You Need To Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read through this chapter.

Inside/Outside

This denotes where a host is located relative to the NBG5715, for example, the computers of your subscribers are the inside hosts, while the web servers on the Internet are the outside hosts.

Global/Local

This denotes the IP address of a host in a packet as the packet traverses a router, for example, the local address refers to the IP address of a host when the packet is in the local network, while the global address refers to the IP address of the host when the same packet is traveling in the WAN side.

Note: Inside/outside refers to the location of a host, while global/local refers to the IP address of a host used in a packet.

An inside local address (ILA) is the IP address of an inside host in a packet when the packet is still in the local network, while an inside global address (IGA) is the IP address of the same inside host when the packet is on the WAN side. The following table summarizes this information.

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Inside	This refers to the host on the LAN.
Outside	This refers to the host on the WAN.
Local	This refers to the packet address (source or destination) as the packet travels on the LAN.
Global	This refers to the packet address (source or destination) as the packet travels on the WAN.

Table 44 NAT Definitions

Note: NAT never changes the IP address (either local or global) of an outside host.

What NAT Does

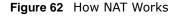
In the simplest form, NAT changes the source IP address in a packet received from a subscriber (the inside local address) to another (the inside global address) before forwarding the packet to the WAN side. When the response comes back, NAT translates the destination address (the inside global address) back to the inside local address before forwarding it to the original inside host. Note that the IP address (either local or global) of an outside host is never changed.

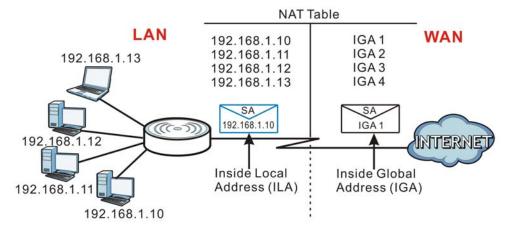
The global IP addresses for the inside hosts can be either static or dynamically assigned by the ISP. In addition, you can designate servers, for example, a web server and a telnet server, on your local network and make them accessible to the outside world. If you do not define any servers , NAT offers the additional benefit of firewall protection. With no servers defined, your NBG5715 filters out

all incoming inquiries, thus preventing intruders from probing your network. For more information on IP address translation, refer to *RFC 1631*, *The IP Network Address Translator (NAT)*.

How NAT Works

Each packet has two addresses – a source address and a destination address. For outgoing packets, the ILA (Inside Local Address) is the source address on the LAN, and the IGA (Inside Global Address) is the source address on the WAN. For incoming packets, the ILA is the destination address on the LAN, and the IGA is the destination address on the WAN. NAT maps private (local) IP addresses to globally unique ones required for communication with hosts on other networks. It replaces the original IP source address in each packet and then forwards it to the Internet. The NBG5715 keeps track of the original addresses and port numbers so incoming reply packets can have their original values restored. The following figure illustrates this.





14.2 The NAT General Screen

Use this screen to enable NAT and set a default server. Click **Network > NAT** to open the **General** screen.



General Port Forwarding NAT Advance	
Network Address Translation(NAT) : Max NAT/Firewall Session Per User	€ Enable C Disable
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Network Address Translation (NAT)	Network Address Translation (NAT) allows the translation of an Internet protocol address used within one network (for example a private IP address used in a local network) to a different IP address known within another network (for example a public IP address used on the Internet).
	Select Enable to activate NAT. Select Disable to turn it off.
Max NAT/Firewall Session Per User	Specify the highest number of NAT sessions that the NBG5715 will permit a host to have at one time.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 45 Network > NAT > General

14.3 The Port Forwarding Screen

Use this screen to forward incoming service requests to the server(s) on your local network and set a default server. You may enter a single port number or a range of port numbers to be forwarded, and the local IP address of the desired server. The port number identifies a service; for example, web service is on port 80 and FTP on port 21. In some cases, such as for unknown services or where one server can support more than one service (for example both FTP and web service), it might be better to specify a range of port numbers.

In addition to the servers for specified services, NAT supports a default server. A service request that does not have a server explicitly designated for it is forwarded to the default server. If the default is not defined, the service request is simply discarded.

Note: Many residential broadband ISP accounts do not allow you to run any server processes (such as a Web or FTP server) from your location. Your ISP may periodically check for servers and may suspend your account if it discovers any active services at your location. If you are unsure, refer to your ISP.

Port forwarding allows you to define the local servers to which the incoming services will be forwarded. To change your NBG5715's port forwarding settings, click **Network > NAT > Port Forwarding**. The screen appears as shown.

Note: If you do not assign a **Default Server**, the NBG5715 discards all packets received for ports that are not specified in this screen or remote management.

Refer to Appendix E on page 237 for port numbers commonly used for particular services.

Figure 64 Network > NAT > Port Forwarding

eneral	Port Forwarding	NAT Advance				
O Det	Server Setup fault Server 19 ange To Server	2.168.1.1				
Service Server II	rwarding Name WWW P Address		Service Prot	ocol TCP&UDP		
#	Status	Name	Protocol	Port	Server IP Address	Modify
1	8	FTP	tcp	21	192.168.1.35	2 1
				Apply cancel		

Table 46	Notwork >	NAT S	Port	Forwarding
Table 40	NELWOIK >	'NAI >	PUIL	Forwarung

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Default Server Setup			
Default Server	In addition to the servers for specified services, NAT supports a default server. A default server receives packets from ports that are not specified in the Port Forwarding screen. You can decide whether you want to use the default server or specify a server manually.		
	Select this to use the default server.		
Change to Server	Select this and manually enter the server's IP address.		
Port Forwarding			
Service Name	Select a pre-defined service from the drop-down list box. The pre-defined service port number(s) and protocol will be displayed in the Port Forwarding Summary section.		
	Otherwise, select User define to manually enter the port number(s) and select the IP protocol.		
Service Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol supported by this virtual server. Choices are TCP, UDP, or TCP&UDP.		
	If you have chosen a pre-defined service in the Service Name field, the protocol will be configured automatically.		
Server IP Address	Enter the inside IP address of the virtual server here and click Add to add it in the Port Forwarding Summary section.		
Port Forwarding Summary			
#	This is the number of an individual port forwarding server entry.		
Status	This icon is turned on when the rule is enabled.		
Name	This field displays a name to identify this rule.		
Protocol	This is the transport layer protocol used for the service.		
Port	This field displays the port number(s).		
Server IP Address	This field displays the inside IP address of the server.		
Modify	Click the Edit icon to open the edit screen where you can modify an existing rule.		
	Click the Remove icon to delete a rule.		

Table 46 Network > NAT > Port Forwarding (continued)			
LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.		
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

Table 46 Network > NAT > Port Forwarding (continued)

14.3.1 Port Forwarding Edit Screen

This screen lets you create or edit a port forwarding rule. Click the **Add Port Forward** button or a rule's **Edit** icon in the **Port Forwarding** screen to open the following screen.

Figure 65 NAT > Port Forwarding Edit

Port Forwarding :	€ Enable	
Service Name :	FTP	www 💌
Protocol :	TCP&UDP	
Port :	21	(Ex: 10-20,30,40)
Server IP Address :	192.168.1.35	
	Back Apply	Cancel

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port Forwarding	Select Enable to turn on this rule and the requested service can be forwarded to the host with a specified internal IP address.
	Select Disable to disallow forwarding of these ports to an inside server without having to delete the entry.
Service Name	Type a name (of up to 31 printable characters) to identify this rule in the first field next to Service Name . Otherwise, select a predefined service in the second field next to Service Name . The predefined service name and port number(s) will display in the Service Name and Port fields.
Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol supported by this virtual server. Choices are TCP, UDP , or TCP&UDP .
	If you have chosen a pre-defined service in the Service Name field, the protocol will be configured automatically.
Port	Type a port number(s) to define the service to be forwarded to the specified server.
	To specify a range of ports, enter a hyphen $(-)$ between the first port and the last port, such as 10
Server IP Address	Type the IP address of the server on your LAN that receives packets from the port(s) specified in the Port field.
Back	Click Back to return to the previous screen.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

 Table 47
 NAT > Port Forwarding Edit

14.4 The NAT Advance Screen

To change your NBG5715's trigger port settings, click **Network** > **NAT** > **NAT** Advance. The screen appears as shown.

Note: Only one LAN computer can use a trigger port (range) at a time.

plicatio	n Rules Summary				
ort Trig	gering Rules				
#	1.11	Incoming		Trigger	
	Name	Port	End Port	Port	End Port
1 [0	0	0	0
2		0	0	0	0
3		0	0	0	0
4		0	0	0	0
5		0	0	0	0
6		0	0	0	0
7		0	0	0	0
8		0	0	0	0
9		0	0	0	0
10		0	0	0	0
11 [0	0	0	0
12		0	0	0	0

Figure 66 Network > NAT > NAT Advance

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Port Triggering Rules			
#	This is the rule index number (read-only).		
Name	Type a unique name (up to 15 characters) for identification purposes. All characters are permitted - including spaces.		
Incoming	Incoming is a port (or a range of ports) that a server on the WAN uses when it sends out a particular service. The NBG5715 forwards the traffic with this port (or range of ports) to the client computer on the LAN that requested the service.		
Port	Type a port number or the starting port number in a range of port numbers.		
End Port	Type a port number or the ending port number in a range of port numbers.		
Trigger	The trigger port is a port (or a range of ports) that causes (or triggers) the NBG5715 to record the IP address of the LAN computer that sent the traffic to a server on the WAN.		
Port	Type a port number or the starting port number in a range of port numbers.		
End Port	Type a port number or the ending port number in a range of port numbers.		
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.		
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

Table 48Network > NAT > NAT Advance

14.5 Technical Reference

The following section contains additional technical information about the NBG5715 features described in this chapter.

14.5.1 NATPort Forwarding: Services and Port Numbers

A port forwarding set is a list of inside (behind NAT on the LAN) servers, for example, web or FTP, that you can make accessible to the outside world even though NAT makes your whole inside network appear as a single machine to the outside world.

Use the **Application** screen to forward incoming service requests to the server(s) on your local network. You may enter a single port number or a range of port numbers to be forwarded, and the local IP address of the desired server. The port number identifies a service; for example, web service is on port 80 and FTP on port 21. In some cases, such as for unknown services or where one server can support more than one service (for example both FTP and web service), it might be better to specify a range of port numbers.

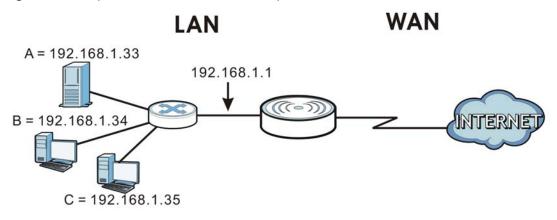
In addition to the servers for specified services, NAT supports a default server. A service request that does not have a server explicitly designated for it is forwarded to the default server. If the default is not defined, the service request is simply discarded.

Note: Many residential broadband ISP accounts do not allow you to run any server processes (such as a Web or FTP server) from your location. Your ISP may periodically check for servers and may suspend your account if it discovers any active services at your location. If you are unsure, refer to your ISP.

14.5.2 NAT Port Forwarding Example

Let's say you want to assign ports 21-25 to one FTP, Telnet and SMTP server (**A** in the example), port 80 to another (**B** in the example) and assign a default server IP address of 192.168.1.35 to a third (**C** in the example). You assign the LAN IP addresses and the ISP assigns the WAN IP address. The NAT network appears as a single host on the Internet.

Figure 67 Multiple Servers Behind NAT Example



14.5.3 Trigger Port Forwarding

Some services use a dedicated range of ports on the client side and a dedicated range of ports on the server side. With regular port forwarding you set a forwarding port in NAT to forward a service (coming in from the server on the WAN) to the IP address of a computer on the client side (LAN). The problem is that port forwarding only forwards a service to a single LAN IP address. In order to use the same service on a different LAN computer, you have to manually replace the LAN computer's IP address in the forwarding port with another LAN computer's IP address.

Trigger port forwarding solves this problem by allowing computers on the LAN to dynamically take turns using the service. The NBG5715 records the IP address of a LAN computer that sends traffic to the WAN to request a service with a specific port number and protocol (a "trigger" port). When the NBG5715's WAN port receives a response with a specific port number and protocol ("incoming" port), the NBG5715 forwards the traffic to the LAN IP address of the computer that sent the request. After that computer's connection for that service closes, another computer on the LAN can use the service in the same manner. This way you do not need to configure a new IP address each time you want a different LAN computer to use the application.

14.5.4 Trigger Port Forwarding Example

The following is an example of trigger port forwarding.

Jane's computer

Figure 68 Trigger Port Forwarding Process: Example

- 1 Jane requests a file from the Real Audio server (port 7070).
- 2 Port 7070 is a "trigger" port and causes the NBG5715 to record Jane's computer IP address. The NBG5715 associates Jane's computer IP address with the "incoming" port range of 6970-7170.
- 3 The Real Audio server responds using a port number ranging between 6970-7170.
- 4 The NBG5715 forwards the traffic to Jane's computer IP address.
- 5 Only Jane can connect to the Real Audio server until the connection is closed or times out. The NBG5715 times out in three minutes with UDP (User Datagram Protocol), or two hours with TCP/IP (Transfer Control Protocol/Internet Protocol).

14.5.5 Two Points To Remember About Trigger Ports

- 1 Trigger events only happen on data that is going coming from inside the NBG5715 and going to the outside.
- 2 If an application needs a continuous data stream, that port (range) will be tied up so that another computer on the LAN can't trigger it.

Dynamic DNS

15.1 Overview

Dynamic DNS services let you use a domain name with a dynamic IP address.

15.1.1 What You Need To Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read through this chapter.

What is DDNS?

Dynamic Domain Name Service (DDNS) services let you use a fixed domain name with a dynamic IP address. Users can always use the same domain name instead of a different dynamic IP address that changes each time to connect to the NBG5715 or a server in your network.

Note: The NBG5715 must have a public global IP address and you should have your registered DDNS account information on hand.

15.2 The Dynamic DNS Screen

To change your NBG5715's DDNS, click **Network > DDNS**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 69 Dynamic DNS	
Dynamic DNS	
Dynamic DNS Setup	
Dynamic DNS :	C Enable 💿 Disable
Service Provider :	www.DynDNS.org
Host Name :	
Username :	
Password :	
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 49	Dynamic DNS
----------	-------------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Dynamic DNS	Select Enable to use dynamic DNS. Select Disable to turn this feature off.
Service Provider	Select the name of your Dynamic DNS service provider.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Host Name	Enter a host names in the field provided. You can specify up to two host names in the field separated by a comma (",").
Usename	Enter your user name.
Password	Enter the password assigned to you.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

 Table 49
 Dynamic DNS (continued)

Static Route

16.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure static routes for your NBG5715.

Each remote node specifies only the network to which the gateway is directly connected, and the NBG5715 has no knowledge of the networks beyond. For instance, the NBG5715 knows about network N2 in the following figure through remote node Router 1. However, the NBG5715 is unable to route a packet to network N3 because it doesn't know that there is a route through the same remote node Router 1 (via gateway Router 2). The static routes are for you to tell the NBG5715 about the networks beyond the remote nodes.

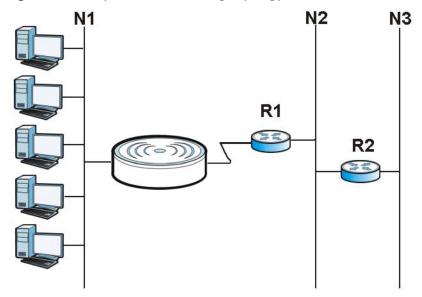


Figure 70 Example of Static Routing Topology

16.2 The Static Route Screen

Click Network > Static Route to open the Static Route screen.

Add 9	Static Route					
/idd c	ducitoute					
Statio	c Route Rules					
#	Status	Name	Destination	Gateway	Subnet Mask	Modify
	0	test	10.1.2.3	10.1.2.251	255,255,255,255	2 1

Figure 71 Network > Static Route

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add Static Route	Click this to create a new rule.
#	This is the number of an individual static route.
Status	This field indicates whether the rule is active (yellow bulb) or not (gray bulb).
Name	This field displays a name to identify this rule.
Destination	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination. Routing is always based on network number.
Subent Mask	This parameter specifies the IP network subnet mask of the final destination.
Gateway	This is the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is a router or switch on the same network segment as the device's LAN or WAN port. The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations.
Modify	Click the Edit icon to open a screen where you can modify an existing rule.
	Click the Remove icon to delete a rule from the NBG5715.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 50Network > Static Route

16.2.1 Add/Edit Static Route

Click the **Add Static Route** button or a rule's **Edit** icon in the **Static Route** screen. Use this screen to configure the required information for a static route.

Figure 72 Static Route: Add/Edit

Static Route :	C Enable 💿 Disable
Route Name :	
Destination IP Address :	0.0.0.0
IP Subnet Mask :	0.0.0.0
Gateway IP Address :	0.0.0.0
	Back Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Static Route	Select to enable or disable this rule.
Route Name	Type a name to identify this rule. You can use up to printable English keyboard characters, including spaces.
Destination IP Address	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination. Routing is always based on network number. If you need to specify a route to a single host, use a subnet mask of 255.255.255.255 in the subnet mask field to force the network number to be identical to the host ID.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask here.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the next-hop gateway. The gateway is a router or switch on the same segment as your NBG5715's interface(s). The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations.
Back	Click Back to return to the previous screen without saving.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

 Table 51
 Static Route: Add/Edit

17

Firewall

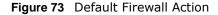
17.1 Overview

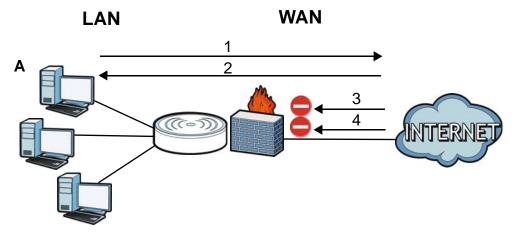
Use these screens to enable and configure the firewall that protects your NBG5715 and your LAN from unwanted or malicious traffic.

Enable the firewall to protect your LAN computers from attacks by hackers on the Internet and control access between the LAN and WAN. By default the firewall:

- allows traffic that originates from your LAN computers to go to all of the networks.
- blocks traffic that originates on the other networks from going to the LAN.

The following figure illustrates the default firewall action. User **A** can initiate an IM (Instant Messaging) session from the LAN to the WAN (1). Return traffic for this session is also allowed (2). However other traffic initiated from the WAN is blocked (3 and 4).





17.1.1 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the General screen to enable or disable the NBG5715's firewall (Section 17.2 on page 117).
- Use the **Services** screen enable service blocking, enter/delete/modify the services you want to block and the date/time you want to block them (Section 17.3 on page 117).

17.1.2 What You Need To Know

The following terms and concepts may help as you read through this chapter.

What is a Firewall?

Originally, the term "firewall" referred to a construction technique designed to prevent the spread of fire from one room to another. The networking term "firewall" is a system or group of systems that enforces an access-control policy between two networks. It may also be defined as a mechanism used to protect a trusted network from a network that is not trusted. Of course, firewalls cannot solve every security problem. A firewall is one of the mechanisms used to establish a network security perimeter in support of a network security policy. It should never be the only mechanism or method employed. For a firewall to guard effectively, you must design and deploy it appropriately. This requires integrating the firewall into a broad information-security policy. In addition, specific policies must be implemented within the firewall itself.

Stateful Inspection Firewall

Stateful inspection firewalls restrict access by screening data packets against defined access rules. They make access control decisions based on IP address and protocol. They also "inspect" the session data to assure the integrity of the connection and to adapt to dynamic protocols. These firewalls generally provide the best speed and transparency; however, they may lack the granular application level access control or caching that some proxies support. Firewalls, of one type or another, have become an integral part of standard security solutions for enterprises.

About the NBG5715 Firewall

The NBG5715's firewall feature physically separates the LAN and the WAN and acts as a secure gateway for all data passing between the networks.

It is a stateful inspection firewall and is designed to protect against Denial of Service attacks when activated (click the **General** tab under **Firewall** and then click the **Enable Firewall** check box). The NBG5715's purpose is to allow a private Local Area Network (LAN) to be securely connected to the Internet. The NBG5715 can be used to prevent theft, destruction and modification of data, as well as log events, which may be important to the security of your network.

The NBG5715 is installed between the LAN and a broadband modem connecting to the Internet. This allows it to act as a secure gateway for all data passing between the Internet and the LAN.

The NBG5715 has one Ethernet WAN port and four Ethernet LAN ports, which are used to physically separate the network into two areas. The WAN (Wide Area Network) port attaches to the broadband (cable or DSL) modem to the Internet.

The LAN (Local Area Network) port attaches to a network of computers, which needs security from the outside world. These computers will have access to Internet services such as e-mail, FTP and the World Wide Web. However, "inbound access" is not allowed (by default) unless the remote host is authorized to use a specific service.

Guidelines For Enhancing Security With Your Firewall

- 1 Change the default password via Web Configurator.
- 2 Think about access control before you connect to the network in any way, including attaching a modem to the port.
- 3 Limit who can access your router.

- 4 Don't enable any local service (such as NTP) that you don't use. Any enabled service could present a potential security risk. A determined hacker might be able to find creative ways to misuse the enabled services to access the firewall or the network.
- **5** For local services that are enabled, protect against misuse. Protect by configuring the services to communicate only with specific peers, and protect by configuring rules to block packets for the services at specific interfaces.
- 6 Protect against IP spoofing by making sure the firewall is active.
- 7 Keep the firewall in a secured (locked) room.

17.2 The Firewall General Screen

Use this screen to enable or disable the NBG5715's firewall, and set up firewall logs. Click **Security** > **Firewall** to open the **General** screen.

Figure 74 Security > Firewall > General I

General	Services				
Firewa	I Setup				
	Enable Fire	wall			
			Apply	Reset	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 52 Security > Firewall > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable Firewall	Select this check box to activate the firewall. The NBG5715 performs access control and protects against Denial of Service (DoS) attacks when the firewall is activated.
Apply	Click Apply to save the settings.
Reset	Click Reset to start configuring this screen again.

17.3 The Firewall Services Screen

If an outside user attempts to probe an unsupported port on your NBG5715, an ICMP response packet is automatically returned. This allows the outside user to know the NBG5715 exists. Use this screen to prevent the ICMP response packet from being sent. This keeps outsiders from discovering your NBG5715 when unsupported ports are probed.

You can also use this screen to enable service blocking, enter/delete/modify the services you want to block and the date/time you want to block them.

Click **Security** > **Firewall** > **Services**. The screen appears as shown next.

MP									
	ond to Ping on:		Г	Disable	*				
Appl	-		I	Disable					
nable Fir	ewall Rule								
₽ Er	hable Firewall Ru	ile							
Appl	У								
dd Firew	all Rule								
Servic	e Name :		Г						
MAC A	ddress :		ſ						
Dest II	Address :		Γ						
Source	e IP Address :		Γ						
Protoc	ol :		[TCP 💌					
DestP	ortRange :		[-					
Source	ePortRange :			-					
Add	Rule								
rewall R	ule								
Fir	ewall Rule								
#	ServiceName	MACaddresse	DestIP	SourcelP	Protocol	DestPortRange	SourcePortRange	Action	Delete
	test	AA:BB:AA:BB:AA:BB	100 160 1 00	10 1 2 2	TCP	12	2010	DROP	THE

Figure 75	Security	>	Firewall	>	Services	I
Iquieis	Security	-	1 II Ewall	-		L

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol is a message control and error-reporting protocol between a host server and a gateway to the Internet. ICMP uses Internet Protocol (IP) datagrams, but the messages are processed by the TCP/IP software and directly apparent to the application user.	
Respond to Ping on	The NBG5715 will not respond to any incoming Ping requests when Disable is selected. Select LAN to reply to incoming LAN Ping requests. Select WAN to reply to incoming WAN Ping requests. Otherwise select LAN & WAN to reply to all incoming LAN and WAN Ping requests.	
Apply	Click Apply to save the settings.	
Enable Firewall Rule		
Enable Firewall Rule	Select this check box to activate the firewall rules that you define (see Add Firewall Rule below).	
Apply	Click Apply to save the settings.	
Add Firewall Rule		
Service Name	Enter a name that identifies or describes the firewall rule.	
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the computer for which the firewall rule applies.	
Dest IP Address	Enter the IP address of the computer to which traffic for the application or service is entering.	
	The NBG5715 applies the firewall rule to traffic initiating from this computer.	
Source IP Address	Enter the IP address of the computer that initializes traffic for the application or service.	
	The NBG5715 applies the firewall rule to traffic initiating from this computer.	

Table 53 Security > Firewall > Services

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Protocol	Select the protocol (ALL,TCP, UDP or BOTH) used to transport the packets for which you want to apply the firewall rule.
Dest Port Range	Enter the port number/range of the destination that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.
Source Port Range	Enter the port number/range of the source that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.
Add Rule	Click Add to save the firewall rule.
Firewall Rule	
#	This is your firewall rule number. The ordering of your rules is important as rules are applied in turn.
Service Name	This is a name that identifies or describes the firewall rule.
MAC address	This is the MAC address of the computer for which the firewall rule applies.
Dest IP	This is the IP address of the computer to which traffic for the application or service is entering.
Source IP	This is the IP address of the computer from which traffic for the application or service is initialized.
Protocol	This is the protocol (ALL,TCP, UDP or BOTH) used to transport the packets for which you want to apply the firewall rule.
Dest Port Range	This is the port number/range of the destination that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.
Source Port Range	This is the port number/range of the source that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.
Action	DROP - Traffic matching the conditions of the firewall rule are stopped.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the firewall rule.
Reset	Click Reset to start configuring this screen again.

Table 53	Security	> Firewall > Services (continued)	

See Appendix E on page 237 for commonly used services and port numbers.

IPSec VPN

18.1 Overview

A virtual private network (VPN) provides secure communications between sites without the expense of leased site-to-site lines. A secure VPN is a combination of tunneling, encryption, authentication, access control and auditing. It is used to transport traffic over the Internet or any insecure network that uses TCP/IP for communication.

Internet Protocol Security (IPSec) is a standards-based VPN that offers flexible solutions for secure data communications across a public network like the Internet. IPSec is built around a number of standardized cryptographic techniques to provide confidentiality, data integrity and authentication at the IP layer.

The following figure provides one perspective of a VPN tunnel.

Figure 76 IPSec VPN: Overview



The VPN tunnel connects the NBG5715 (X) and the remote IPSec router (Y). These routers then connect the local network (A) and remote network (B).

18.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **General** screen to display and manage the NBG5715's VPN rules (tunnels) (Section 18.4 on page 123).
- Use the **SA Monitor** screen to display and manage active VPN connections (Section 18.6 on page 135).

18.3 What You Need To Know

A VPN tunnel is usually established in two phases. Each phase establishes a security association (SA), a contract indicating what security parameters the NBG5715 and the remote IPSec router will use.

The first phase establishes an Internet Key Exchange (IKE) SA between the NBG5715 and remote IPSec router. The second phase uses the IKE SA to securely establish an IPSec SA through which the NBG5715 and remote IPSec router can send data between computers on the local network and remote network. The following figure illustrates this.

Figure 77 VPN: IKE SA and IPSec SA



In this example, a computer in network **A** is exchanging data with a computer in network **B**. Inside networks **A** and **B**, the data is transmitted the same way data is normally transmitted in the networks. Between routers **X** and **Y**, the data is protected by tunneling, encryption, authentication, and other security features of the IPSec SA. The IPSec SA is established securely using the IKE SA that routers **X** and **Y** established first.

18.3.1 IKE SA (IKE Phase 1) Overview

The IKE SA provides a secure connection between the NBG5715 and remote IPSec router.

It takes several steps to establish an IKE SA. The negotiation mode determines the number of steps to use. There are two negotiation modes--main mode and aggressive mode. Main mode provides better security, while aggressive mode is faster.

Both routers must use the same negotiation mode.

These modes are discussed in more detail in Section 18.7.4 on page 138. Main mode is used in various examples in the rest of this section.

IP Addresses of the NBG5715 and Remote IPSec Router

In the NBG5715, you have to specify the IP addresses of the NBG5715 and the remote IPSec router to establish an IKE SA.

You can usually provide a static IP address or a domain name for the NBG5715. Sometimes, your NBG5715 might also offer another alternative, such as using the IP address of a port or interface.

You can usually provide a static IP address or a domain name for the remote IPSec router as well. Sometimes, you might not know the IP address of the remote IPSec router (for example, telecommuters). In this case, you can still set up the IKE SA, but only the remote IPSec router can initiate an IKE SA.

18.3.2 IPSec SA (IKE Phase 2) Overview

Once the NBG5715 and remote IPSec router have established the IKE SA, they can securely negotiate an IPSec SA through which to send data between computers on the networks.

Note: The IPSec SA stays connected even if the underlying IKE SA is not available anymore.

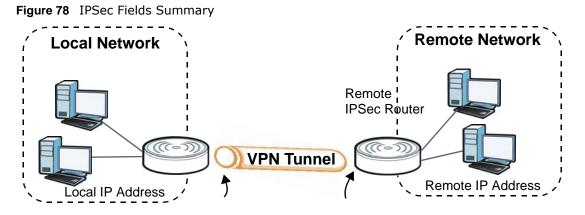
Local Network and Remote Network

In an IPSec SA, the local network consists of devices connected to the NBG5715 and may be called the local policy. Similarly, the remote network consists of the devices connected to the remote IPSec router and may be called the remote policy.

Note: It is not recommended to set a VPN rule's local and remote network settings both to 0.0.0.0 (any). This causes the NBG5715 to try to forward all access attempts (to the local network, the Internet or even the NBG5715) to the remote IPSec router. In this case, you can no longer manage the NBG5715.

18.4 The General Screen

The following figure helps explain the main fields in the web configurator.



Local and remote IP addresses must be static.

Click **Security** > **IPSec VPN** to display the **Summary** screen. This is a read-only menu of your VPN rules (tunnels). Edit a VPN rule by clicking the **Edit** icon.

#	Status	Local Addr.	Remote Addr.	Encap.	Algorithm	Gateway	Modify
1	222	- 22	<u>12</u> 2		8 <u>22</u>	22	2 📋
2	11.1 1	1223	<u>12</u> 3	525	122	1220	21
3	220	3421	128	1922	82	3253	2 📋
4	-		<u>116</u> 2	1922	3. 4.2		2 1
5		-	 :		11-	-	2 1
C	mmary						

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This is the VPN policy index number.
Status	This field displays whether the VPN policy is active or not.
	This icon is turned on when the rule is enabled.
Local Addr.	This displays the beginning and ending (static) IP addresses or a (static) IP address and a subnet mask of computer(s) on your local network behind your NBG5715.
Remote Addr.	This displays the beginning and ending (static) IP addresses or a (static) IP address and a subnet mask of computer(s) on the remote network behind the remote IPSec router.
	This field displays 0.0.0.0 when the Secure Gateway Address field displays 0.0.0.0 . In this case only the remote IPSec router can initiate the VPN.
Encap.	This field displays Tunnel or Transport mode (Tunnel is the default selection).
Algorithm	This field displays the security protocol, encryption algorithm and authentication algorithm used for an SA.
Gateway	This is the static WAN IP address or URL of the remote IPSec router. This field displays 0.0.0.0 when you configure the Secure Gateway Address field in the Rule Setup screen to 0.0.0.0 .
Modify	Click the Edit icon to go to the screen where you can edit the VPN rule.
	Click the Remove icon to remove an existing VPN rule.
Allow Through IPSec Tunnel	Select this check box to send NetBIOS packets through the VPN connection.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 54 Security > IPSec VPN > General

18.5 Edit VPN Rule

Click on a policy's Edit icon in the IPSec VPN > General screen to edit the VPN policy.

Note: The NBG5715 uses the system default gateway interfacei's WAN IP address as its WAN IP address to set up a VPN tunnel.

18.5.1 IKEKey Setup

IKEprovides more protection so it is generally recommended. You only configure VPN manual key when you select **IKE** in the **IPSec Keying Mode** field on the **IPSec VPN** > **General** > **Edit** screen.

Property	
Property :	C Enable C Disable
🗌 Keep Alive	
NAT Traversal	
IPSec Keying Mode :	IKE
DNS Server (for IPSec VPN)	0.0.0.0
Local Policy	
Local Address :	0.0.0.0
Local Address End/Mask :	255.255.255.0
Remote Policy	
Remote Address Start :	0.0.0.0
Remote Address End/Mask :	255.255.255.0
Authentication Method	
My IP Address :	0.0.0.0
Local ID Type :	IP V
Local Content :	
Secure Gateway Address :	0.0.0.0
Peer ID Type :	IP T
Peer Content :	
IP Sec Algorithm	
Phase 1	
Pre-Shared Key :	
Mode :	Main 🔽
Encryption Algorithm :	DES V
Authentication Algorithm :	MD5 V
SA Life Time :	3600 (seconds)
Key Group :	DH1
Phase 2	
Encapsulation Mode :	Tunnel
IPSec Protocol :	ESP 💌
Encryption Algorithm :	DES 💌
Authentication Algorithm :	MD5
SA Life Time :	3600 (seconds)
Key Group :	DH1 -
	Back Apply Cancel

Figure 80 Security > IPSec VPN > General > Edit: IKE

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Property	
Propert	Select Enable to activate this VPN policy.
Keep Alive	Select this check box to have the NBG5715 automatically reinitiate the SA after the SA lifetime times out, even if there is no traffic. The remote IPSec router must also have keep alive enabled in order for this feature to work.
NAT Traversal	Select this check box to enable NAT traversal. NAT traversal allows you to set up a VPN connection when there are NAT routers between the two IPSec routers.
	The remote IPSec router must also have NAT traversal enabled.
	You can use NAT traversal with ESP protocol using Transport or Tunnel mode, but not with AH protocol nor with manual key management. In order for an IPSec router behind a NAT router to receive an initiating IPSec packet, set the NAT router to forward UDP ports 500 and 4500 to the IPSec router behind the NAT router.
IPSec Keying Mode	Select IKE from the drop-down list box. IKE provides more protection so it is generally recommended.
DNS Server (for IPSec VPN)	If there is a private DNS server that services the VPN, type its IP address here. The NBG5715 assigns this additional DNS server to the NBG5715's DHCP clients that have IP addresses in this IPSec rule's range of local addresses.
	A DNS server allows clients on the VPN to find other computers and servers on the VPN by their (private) domain names.
Local Policy	Local IP addresses must be static and correspond to the remote IPSec router's configured remote IP addresses.
	Two active SAs can have the same configured local or remote IP address, but not both. You can configure multiple SAs between the same local and remote IP addresses, as long as only one is active at any time.
	In order to have more than one active rule with the Secure Gateway Address field set to 0.0.0.0 , the ranges of the local IP addresses cannot overlap between rules.
	If you configure an active rule with 0.0.0.0 in the Secure Gateway Address field and the LAN's full IP address range as the local IP address, then you cannot configure any other active rules with the Secure Gateway Address field set to 0.0.0.0 .
Local Address	For a single IP address, enter a (static) IP address on the LAN behind your NBG5715.
	For a specific range of IP addresses, enter the beginning (static) IP address, in a range of computers on your LAN behind your NBG5715.
	To specify IP addresses on a network by their subnet mask, enter a (static) IP address on the LAN behind your NBG5715.
Local Address End	When the local IP address is a single address, type it a second time here.
/Mask	When the local IP address is a range, enter the end (static) IP address, in a range of computers on the LAN behind your NBG5715.
	When the local IP address is a subnet address, enter a subnet mask on the LAN behind your NBG5715.

 Table 55
 Security > IPSec VPN > General > Edit: IKE

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Remote Policy	Remote IP addresses must be static and correspond to the remote IPSec router's configured local IP addresses. The remote fields do not apply when the Secure Gateway IP Address field is configured to 0.0.0.0 . In this case only the remote IPSec router can initiate the VPN.
	Two active SAs cannot have the local and remote IP address(es) both the same. Two active SAs can have the same local or remote IP address, but not both. You can configure multiple SAs between the same local and remote IP addresses, as long as only one is active at any time.
Remote Address Start	For a single IP address, enter a (static) IP address on the network behind the remote IPSec router.
	For a specific range of IP addresses, enter the beginning (static) IP address, in a range of computers on the network behind the remote IPSec router.
	To specify IP addresses on a network by their subnet mask, enter a (static) IP address on the network behind the remote IPSec router.
Remote Address	When the remote IP address is a single address, type it a second time here.
End /Mask	When the remote IP address is a range, enter the end (static) IP address, in a range of computers on the network behind the remote IPSec router.
	When the remote IP address is a subnet address, enter a subnet mask on the network behind the remote IPSec router.
Authentication Met	hod
My IP Address	Enter the NBG5715's static WAN IP address (if it has one) or leave the field set to 0.0.0.0 .
	The NBG5715 uses its current WAN IP address (static or dynamic) in setting up the VPN tunnel if you leave this field as 0.0.0. If the WAN connection goes down, the NBG5715 uses the dial backup IP address for the VPN tunnel when using dial backup or the LAN IP address when using traffic redirect.
	Otherwise, you can enter one of the dynamic domain names that you have configured (in the DDNS screen) to have the NBG5715 use that dynamic domain name's IP address.
	The VPN tunnel has to be rebuilt if My IP Address changes after setup.
Local ID Type	Select IP to identify this NBG5715 by its IP address.
	Select Domain Name to identify this NBG5715 by a domain name.
	Select E-mail to identify this NBG5715 by an e-mail address.

Table 55Security > IPSec VPN > General > Edit: IKE (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Local Content	When you select IP in the Local ID Type field, type the IP address of your computer in the Local Content field. The NBG5715 automatically uses the IP address in the My IP Address field (refer to the My IP Address field description) if you configure the Local Content field to 0.0.0 or leave it blank.
	It is recommended that you type an IP address other than 0.0.0.0 in the Local Content field or use the Domain Name or E-mail ID type in the following situations.
	When there is a NAT router between the two IPSec routers.
	When you want the remote IPSec router to be able to distinguish between VPN connection requests that come in from IPSec routers with dynamic WAN IP addresses.
	When you select Domain Name or E-mail in the Local ID Type field, type a domain name or e-mail address by which to identify this NBG5715 in the Local Content field. Use up to 31 ASCII characters including spaces, although trailing spaces are truncated. The domain name or e-mail address is for identification purposes only and can be any string.
Secure Gateway Address	Type the WAN IP address or the domain name (up to 31 characters) of the IPSec router with which you're making the VPN connection. Set this field to 0.0.0.0 if the remote IPSec router has a dynamic WAN IP address (the IPSec Keying Mode field must be set to IKE).
	In order to have more than one active rule with the Secure Gateway Address field set to 0.0.0.0 , the ranges of the local IP addresses cannot overlap between rules.
	If you configure an active rule with 0.0.0.0 in the Secure Gateway Address field and the LAN's full IP address range as the local IP address, then you cannot configure any other active rules with the Secure Gateway Address field set to 0.0.0.0 .
	You can also enter a remote secure gateway's domain name in the Secure Gateway Address field if the remote secure gateway has a dynamic WAN IP address and is using DDNS. The NBG5715 has to rebuild the VPN tunnel each time the remote secure gateway's WAN IP address changes (there may be a delay until the DDNS servers are updated with the remote gateway's new WAN IP address).
Peer ID Type	Select IP to identify the remote IPSec router by its IP address.
	Select Domain Name to identify the remote IPSec router by a domain name.
	Select E-mail to identify the remote IPSec router by an e-mail address.

Table 55 Security > IPSec VPN > General > Edit: IKE (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Peer Content	The configuration of the peer content depends on the peer ID type.
	For IP , type the IP address of the computer with which you will make the VPN connection. If you configure this field to 0.0.0.0 or leave it blank, the NBG5715 will use the address in the Secure Gateway Address field (refer to the Secure Gateway Address field description).
	For Domain Name or E-mail , type a domain name or e-mail address by which to identify the remote IPSec router. Use up to 31 ASCII characters including spaces, although trailing spaces are truncated. The domain name or e-mail address is for identification purposes only and can be any string.
	It is recommended that you type an IP address other than 0.0.0.0 or use the Domain Name or E-mail ID type in the following situations:
	When there is a NAT router between the two IPSec routers.
	When you want the NBG5715 to distinguish between VPN connection requests that come in from remote IPSec routers with dynamic WAN IP addresses.
IPSec Algorithm	
Phase 1	
Pre-Shared Key	Type your pre-shared key in this field. A pre-shared key identifies a communicating party during a phase 1 IKE negotiation. It is called "pre-shared" because you have to share it with another party before you can communicate with them over a secure connection.
	Type from 8 to 31 case-sensitive ASCII characters or from 16 to 62 hexadecimal ("0-9", "A-F") characters. You must precede a hexadecimal key with a " $0x''$ (zero x), which is not counted as part of the 16 to 62 character range for the key. For example, in " $0x0123456789ABCDEF$ ", " $0x''$ denotes that the key is hexadecimal and " $0123456789ABCDEF$ " is the key itself.
	Both ends of the VPN tunnel must use the same pre-shared key. You will receive a "PYLD_MALFORMED" (payload malformed) packet if the same pre-shared key is not used on both ends.
Mode	Select Main or Aggressive from the drop-down list box. Multiple SAs connecting through a secure gateway must have the same negotiation mode.
Encryption Algorithm	Select which key size and encryption algorithm to use for data communications. Choices are:
	DES - a 56-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm
	3DES - a 168-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm
	The NBG5715 and the remote IPSec router must use the same algorithms and key , which can be used to encrypt and decrypt the message or to generate and verify a message authentication code. Longer keys require more processing power, resulting in increased latency and decreased throughput.
Authentication Algorithm	Select which hash algorithm to use to authenticate packet data. Choices are SHA1 and MD5 . SHA1 is generally considered stronger than MD5 , but it is also slower.
SA Life Time	Define the length of time before an IKE or IPSec SA automatically renegotiates in this field. It may range from 1 to 2,000,000,000 seconds.
	A short SA Life Time increases security by forcing the two VPN gateways to update the encryption and authentication keys. However, every time the VPN tunnel renegotiates, all users accessing remote resources are temporarily disconnected.

Table 55 Security > IPSec VPN > General > Edit: IKE (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Key Group	You must choose a key group for phase 1 IKE setup. DH1 refers to Diffie-Hellman Group 1 a 768 bit random number. DH2 refers to Diffie-Hellman Group 2 a 1024 bit (1Kb) random number.
Phase 2	
Encapsulation Mode	Select Tunnel mode or Transport mode from the drop-down list box.
IPSec Protocol	Select the security protocols used for an SA.
	Both AH and ESP increase processing requirements and communications latency (delay).
	If you select ESP here, you must select options from the Encryption Algorithm and Authentication Algorithm fields (described below).
Encryption Algorithm	Select which key size and encryption algorithm to use for data communications. Choices are:
	DES - a 56-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm
	3DES - a 168-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm
	The NBG5715 and the remote IPSec router must use the same algorithms and key , which can be used to encrypt and decrypt the message or to generate and verify a message authentication code. Longer keys require more processing power, resulting in increased latency and decreased throughput.
Authentication Algorithm	Select which hash algorithm to use to authenticate packet data. Choices are SHA1 and MD5 . SHA1 is generally considered stronger than MD5 , but it is also slower.
SA Life Time	Define the length of time before an IKE or IPSec SA automatically renegotiates in this field. It may range from 1 to 2,000,000,000 seconds.
	A short SA Life Time increases security by forcing the two VPN gateways to update the encryption and authentication keys. However, every time the VPN tunnel renegotiates, all users accessing remote resources are temporarily disconnected.
Key Group	You must choose a key group for phase 1 IKE setup. DH1 refers to Diffie-Hellman Group 1 a 768 bit random number. DH2 refers to Diffie-Hellman Group 2 a 1024 bit (1Kb) random number.
Back	Click Back to return to the previous screen.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previous settings.

Table 55 Security > IPSec VPN > General > Edit: IKE (continued)

18.5.2 Manual Key Setup

Manual key management is useful if you have problems with IKE key management.

18.5.2.1 Security Parameter Index (SPI)

An SPI is used to distinguish different SAs terminating at the same destination and using the same IPSec protocol. This data allows for the multiplexing of SAs to a single gateway. The **SPI** (Security Parameter Index) along with a destination IP address uniquely identify a particular Security Association (SA). The **SPI** is transmitted from the remote VPN gateway to the local VPN gateway. The local VPN gateway then uses the network, encryption and key values that the administrator associated with the SPI to establish the tunnel.

Current ZyXEL implementation assumes identical outgoing and incoming SPIs.

18.5.2.2 IPSec SA Using Manual Keys

You might set up an IPSec SA using manual keys when you want to establish a VPN tunnel quickly, for example, for troubleshooting. You should only do this as a temporary solution, however, because it is not as secure as a regular IPSec SA.

In IPSec SAs using manual keys, the NBG5715 and remote IPSec router do not establish an IKE SA. They only establish an IPSec SA. As a result, an IPSec SA using manual keys has some characteristics of IKE SA and some characteristics of IPSec SA. There are also some differences between IPSec SA using manual keys and other types of SA.

18.5.2.3 IPSec SA Proposal Using Manual Keys

In IPSec SA using manual keys, you can only specify one encryption algorithm and one authentication algorithm. There is no DH key exchange, so you have to provide the encryption key and the authentication key the NBG5715 and remote IPSec router use.

Note: The NBG5715 and remote IPSec router must use the same encryption key and authentication key.

18.5.3 Configuring Manual Key

You only configure VPN manual key when you select **Manual** in the **IPSec Keying Mode** field on the **IPSec VPN > General > Edit** screen.

			- ·	
Figure 81	Security >	IPSec VPN >	General >	Edit: Manual

Property		
Property :	C Enable C Disable	
IPSec Keying Mode :	Manual 💌	
DNS Server (for IPSec VPN)	0.0.0.0	
Local Policy		
Local Address :	0.0.0.0	
Local Address End/Mask :	255.255.255.0	
Remote Policy		
Remote Address Start :	0.0.0.0	
Remote Address End/Mask :	255.255.255.0	
Authentication Method		
My IP Address :	0.0.0.0	
Secure Gateway Address :	0.0.0.0	
IPSec Algorithm		
SPI :	101 (Hex 100-FFFFFFF)	
Encryption Algorithm :	DES 💌	
Encryption Key :		(DES:16 digit Hex,3DES:48 digit
	Hex)	
Authentication Algorithm :	MD5	
Authentication Key :		(MD5:32 digit Hex,SHA1:40 digit
Encapsulation Mode :	Hex)	
IPSec Protocol :	ESP 💌	
	Back Apply Cancel	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 56Security > IPSec VPN > General > Edit: Manual

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Property	
Property	Select Enable to activate this VPN policy.
IPSec Keying Mode	Select Manual from the drop-down list box. Manual is a useful option for troubleshooting if you have problems using IKE key management.
DNS Server (for IPSec VPN)	If there is a private DNS server that services the VPN, type its IP address here. The NBG5715 assigns this additional DNS server to the NBG5715's DHCP clients that have IP addresses in this IPSec rule's range of local addresses.
	A DNS server allows clients on the VPN to find other computers and servers on the VPN by their (private) domain names.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Local Policy	Local IP addresses must be static and correspond to the remote IPSec router's configured remote IP addresses.
	Two active SAs can have the same configured local or remote IP address, but not both. You can configure multiple SAs between the same local and remote IP addresses, as long as only one is active at any time.
	In order to have more than one active rule with the Secure Gateway Address field set to 0.0.0.0 , the ranges of the local IP addresses cannot overlap between rules.
	If you configure an active rule with 0.0.00 in the Secure Gateway Address field and the LAN's full IP address range as the local IP address, then you cannot configure any other active rules with the Secure Gateway Address field set to 0.0.0.0 .
Local Address	For a single IP address, enter a (static) IP address on the LAN behind your NBG5715.
	For a specific range of IP addresses, enter the beginning (static) IP address, in a range of computers on your LAN behind your NBG5715.
	To specify IP addresses on a network by their subnet mask, enter a (static) IP address on the LAN behind your NBG5715.
Local Address	When the local IP address is a single address, type it a second time here.
End /Mask	When the local IP address is a range, enter the end (static) IP address, in a range of computers on the LAN behind your NBG5715.
	When the local IP address is a subnet address, enter a subnet mask on the LAN behind your NBG5715.
Remote Policy	Remote IP addresses must be static and correspond to the remote IPSec router's configured local IP addresses. The remote fields do not apply when the Secure Gateway IP Address field is configured to 0.0.0.0 . In this case only the remote IPSec router can initiate the VPN.
	Two active SAs cannot have the local and remote IP address(es) both the same. Two active SAs can have the same local or remote IP address, but not both. You can configure multiple SAs between the same local and remote IP addresses, as long as only one is active at any time.
Remote Address Start	For a single IP address, enter a (static) IP address on the network behind the remote IPSec router.
	For a specific range of IP addresses, enter the beginning (static) IP address, in a range of computers on the network behind the remote IPSec router.
	To specify IP addresses on a network by their subnet mask, enter a (static) IP address on the network behind the remote IPSec router.
Remote Address	When the remote IP address is a single address, type it a second time here.
End /Mask	When the remote IP address is a range, enter the end (static) IP address, in a range of computers on the network behind the remote IPSec router.
	When the remote IP address is a subnet address, enter a subnet mask on the network behind the remote IPSec router.
Authentication Me	thod

 Table 56
 Security > IPSec VPN > General > Edit: Manual (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
My IP Address	Enter the NBG5715's static WAN IP address (if it has one) or leave the field set to 0.0.0.0 .
	The NBG5715 uses its current WAN IP address (static or dynamic) in setting up the VPN tunnel if you leave this field as 0.0.0.0 . If the WAN connection goes down, the NBG5715 uses the dial backup IP address for the VPN tunnel when using dial backup or the LAN IP address when using traffic redirect.
	Otherwise, you can enter one of the dynamic domain names that you have configured (in the DDNS screen) to have the NBG5715 use that dynamic domain name's IP address.
	The VPN tunnel has to be rebuilt if My IP Address changes after setup.
Secure Gateway Address	Type the WAN IP address or the domain name (up to 31 characters) of the IPSec router with which you're making the VPN connection. Set this field to 0.0.0.0 if the remote IPSec router has a dynamic WAN IP address (the IPSec Keying Mode field must be set to IKE).
	In order to have more than one active rule with the Secure Gateway Address field set to 0.0.0.0 , the ranges of the local IP addresses cannot overlap between rules.
	If you configure an active rule with 0.0.0.0 in the Secure Gateway Address field and the LAN's full IP address range as the local IP address, then you cannot configure any other active rules with the Secure Gateway Address field set to 0.0.0.0 .
	You can also enter a remote secure gateway's domain name in the Secure Gateway Address field if the remote secure gateway has a dynamic WAN IP address and is using DDNS. The NBG5715 has to rebuild the VPN tunnel each time the remote secure gateway's WAN IP address changes (there may be a delay until the DDNS servers are updated with the remote gateway's new WAN IP address).
IPSec Algorithm	
SPI	Type a unique SPI (Security Parameter Index) from one to four characters long. Valid Characters are "0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9".
Encryption Algorithm	Select which key size and encryption algorithm to use in the IKE SA. Choices are:
Algorithm	DES - a 56-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm
	3DES - a 168-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm
	The NBG5715 and the remote IPSec router must use the same algorithms and keys. Longer keys require more processing power, resulting in increased latency and decreased throughput.
Encryption Key	This field is applicable when you select ESP in the IPSec Protocol field above.
	With DES , type a unique key 8 characters long. With 3DES , type a unique key 24 characters long. Any characters may be used, including spaces, but trailing spaces are truncated.
Authentication Algorithm	Select which hash algorithm to use to authenticate packet data in the IPSec SA. Choices are SHA1 and MD5 . SHA1 is generally considered stronger than MD5 , but it is also slower.
Authentication Key	Type a unique authentication key to be used by IPSec if applicable. Enter 16 characters for MD5 authentication or characters for SHA-1 authentication. Any characters may be used, including spaces, but trailing spaces are truncated.
Encapsulation Mode	Select Tunnel mode or Transport mode from the drop-down list box.

 Table 56
 Security > IPSec VPN > General > Edit: Manual (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPSec Protocol	Select the security protocols used for an SA.
	Both AH and ESP increase processing requirements and communications latency (delay).
	If you select ESP here, you must select options from the Encryption Algorithm and Authentication Algorithm fields (described below).
Back	Click Back to return to the previous screen.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to restore your previous settings.

 Table 56
 Security > IPSec VPN > General > Edit: Manual (continued)

18.6 The SA Monitor Screen

In the Web Configurator, click **Security** > **IPSec VPN** > **SA Monitor**. Use this screen to display and manage active VPN connections.

A Security Association (SA) is the group of security settings related to a specific VPN tunnel. This screen displays active VPN connections. Use **Refresh** to display active VPN connections.

rrent IP Sec	Security Association			
status	Connection Name	Remote Gateway	Local Address	Remote Address

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field displays whether the VPN connection is up (yellow bulb) or down (gray bulb).
Connection Name	This field displays the identification name for this VPN policy.
Remote Gateway	This is the static WAN IP address or URL of the remote IPSec router.
Local Address	This is the IP address of computer(s) on your local network behind your NBG5715.
Remote Address	This is the IP address of computer(s) on the remote network behind the remote IPSec router.
Refresh	Click Refresh to display the current active VPN connection(s).

Table 57Security > VPN > SA Monitor

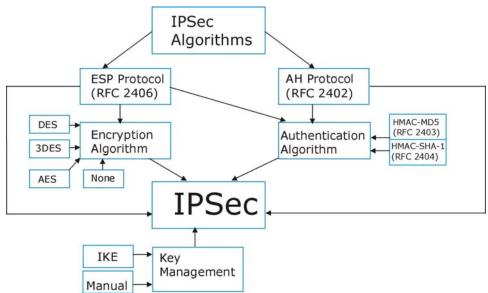
18.7 Technical Reference

This section provides some technical background information about the topics covered in this chapter.

18.7.1 IPSec Architecture

The overall IPSec architecture is shown as follows.





IPSec Algorithms

The **ESP** (Encapsulating Security Payload) Protocol (RFC 2406) and **AH** (Authentication Header) protocol (RFC 2402) describe the packet formats and the default standards for packet structure (including implementation algorithms).

The Encryption Algorithm describes the use of encryption techniques such as DES (Data Encryption Standard) and Triple DES algorithms.

The Authentication Algorithms, HMAC-MD5 (RFC 2403) and HMAC-SHA-1 (RFC 2404, provide an authentication mechanism for the **AH** and **ESP** protocols.

Key Management

Key management allows you to determine whether to use IKE (ISAKMP) or manual key configuration in order to set up a VPN.

18.7.2 Encapsulation

The two modes of operation for IPSec VPNs are **Transport** mode and **Tunnel** mode. At the time of writing, the NBG5715 supports **Tunnel** mode only.

Figure 84 Transport and Tunnel Mode IPSec Encapsulation

Original IP Packet	IP Header	TCP Header	Data		
Transport Mode Protected Packet	IPSec Header	IP Header	TCP Header	Data	
Tunnel Mode	IP	IPSec	IP	TCP	Data
Protected Packet	Header	Header	Header	Header	Data

Transport Mode

Transport mode is used to protect upper layer protocols and only affects the data in the IP packet. In Transport mode, the IP packet contains the security protocol (AH or ESP) located after the original IP header and options, but before any upper layer protocols contained in the packet (such as TCP and UDP).

With **ESP**, protection is applied only to the upper layer protocols contained in the packet. The IP header information and options are not used in the authentication process. Therefore, the originating IP address cannot be verified for integrity against the data.

With the use of AH as the security protocol, protection is extended forward into the IP header to verify the integrity of the entire packet by use of portions of the original IP header in the hashing process.

Tunnel Mode

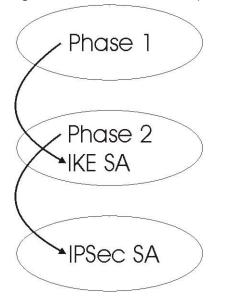
Tunnel mode encapsulates the entire IP packet to transmit it securely. A Tunnel mode is required for gateway services to provide access to internal systems. Tunnel mode is fundamentally an IP tunnel with authentication and encryption. This is the most common mode of operation. Tunnel mode is required for gateway to gateway and host to gateway communications. **Tunnel** mode communications have two sets of IP headers:

- Outside header: The outside IP header contains the destination IP address of the VPN gateway.
- Inside header: The inside IP header contains the destination IP address of the final system behind the VPN gateway. The security protocol appears after the outer IP header and before the inside IP header.

18.7.3 IKE Phases

There are two phases to every IKE (Internet Key Exchange) negotiation – phase 1 (Authentication) and phase 2 (Key Exchange). A phase 1 exchange establishes an IKE SA and the second one uses that SA to negotiate SAs for IPSec.

Figure 85 Two Phases to Set Up the IPSec SA



In phase 1 you must:

- Choose a negotiation mode.
- Authenticate the connection by entering a pre-shared key.
- Choose an encryption algorithm.
- Choose an authentication algorithm.
- Choose a Diffie-Hellman public-key cryptography key group (DH1 or DH2).
- Set the IKE SA lifetime. This field allows you to determine how long an IKE SA should stay up before it times out. An IKE SA times out when the IKE SA lifetime period expires. If an IKE SA times out when an IPSec SA is already established, the IPSec SA stays connected.

In phase 2 you must:

- Choose an encryption algorithm.
- Choose an authentication algorithm
- Choose a Diffie-Hellman public-key cryptography key group.
- Set the IPSec SA lifetime. This field allows you to determine how long the IPSec SA should stay up before it times out. The NBG5715 automatically renegotiates the IPSec SA if there is traffic when the IPSec SA lifetime period expires. If an IPSec SA times out, then the IPSec router must renegotiate the SA the next time someone attempts to send traffic.

18.7.4 Negotiation Mode

The phase 1 **Negotiation Mode** you select determines how the Security Association (SA) will be established for each connection through IKE negotiations.

 Main Mode ensures the highest level of security when the communicating parties are negotiating authentication (phase 1). It uses 6 messages in three round trips: SA negotiation, Diffie-Hellman exchange and an exchange of nonces (a nonce is a random number). This mode features identity protection (your identity is not revealed in the negotiation). • Aggressive Mode is quicker than Main Mode because it eliminates several steps when the communicating parties are negotiating authentication (phase 1). However the trade-off is that faster speed limits its negotiating power and it also does not provide identity protection. It is useful in remote access situations where the address of the initiator is not know by the responder and both parties want to use pre-shared key authentication.

18.7.5 IPSec and NAT

Read this section if you are running IPSec on a host computer behind the NBG5715.

NAT is incompatible with the **AH** protocol in both **Transport** and **Tunnel** mode. An IPSec VPN using the **AH** protocol digitally signs the outbound packet, both data payload and headers, with a hash value appended to the packet. When using **AH** protocol, packet contents (the data payload) are not encrypted.

A NAT device in between the IPSec endpoints will rewrite either the source or destination address with one of its own choosing. The VPN device at the receiving end will verify the integrity of the incoming packet by computing its own hash value, and complain that the hash value appended to the received packet doesn't match. The VPN device at the receiving end doesn't know about the NAT in the middle, so it assumes that the data has been maliciously altered.

IPSec using **ESP** in **Tunnel** mode encapsulates the entire original packet (including headers) in a new IP packet. The new IP packet's source address is the outbound address of the sending VPN gateway, and its destination address is the inbound address of the VPN device at the receiving end. When using **ESP** protocol with authentication, the packet contents (in this case, the entire original packet) are encrypted. The encrypted contents, but not the new headers, are signed with a hash value appended to the packet.

Tunnel mode **ESP** with authentication is compatible with NAT because integrity checks are performed over the combination of the "original header plus original payload," which is unchanged by a NAT device.

Transport mode ESP with authentication is not compatible with NAT.

SECURITY PROTOCOL	MODE	NAT
AH	Transport	Ν
AH	Tunnel	Ν
ESP	Transport	Ν
ESP	Tunnel	Y

Table 58 VPN and NAT

18.7.6 VPN, NAT, and NAT Traversal

NAT is incompatible with the AH protocol in both transport and tunnel mode. An IPSec VPN using the AH protocol digitally signs the outbound packet, both data payload and headers, with a hash value appended to the packet, but a NAT device between the IPSec endpoints rewrites the source or destination address. As a result, the VPN device at the receiving end finds a mismatch between the hash value and the data and assumes that the data has been maliciously altered.

NAT is not normally compatible with ESP in transport mode either, but the NBG5715's **NAT Traversal** feature provides a way to handle this. NAT traversal allows you to set up an IKE SA when there are NAT routers between the two IPSec routers.

Figure 86 NAT Router Between IPSec Routers



Normally you cannot set up an IKE SA with a NAT router between the two IPSec routers because the NAT router changes the header of the IPSec packet. NAT traversal solves the problem by adding a UDP port 500 header to the IPSec packet. The NAT router forwards the IPSec packet with the UDP port 500 header unchanged. In the above figure, when IPSec router **A** tries to establish an IKE SA, IPSec router **B** checks the UDP port 500 header, and IPSec routers **A** and **B** build the IKE SA.

For NAT traversal to work, you must:

- Use ESP security protocol (in either transport or tunnel mode).
- Use IKE keying mode.
- Enable NAT traversal on both IPSec endpoints.
- Set the NAT router to forward UDP port 500 to IPSec router A.

Finally, NAT is compatible with ESP in tunnel mode because integrity checks are performed over the combination of the "original header plus original payload," which is unchanged by a NAT device. The compatibility of AH and ESP with NAT in tunnel and transport modes is summarized in the following table.

SECURITY PROTOCOL	MODE	NAT
AH	Transport	Ν
AH	Tunnel	Ν
ESP	Transport	Y*
ESP	Tunnel	Y

Table 59 VPN and NAT

Y* - This is supported in the NBG5715 if you enable NAT traversal.

18.7.7 ID Type and Content

With aggressive negotiation mode (see Section 18.7.4 on page 138), the NBG5715 identifies incoming SAs by ID type and content since this identifying information is not encrypted. This enables the NBG5715 to distinguish between multiple rules for SAs that connect from remote IPSec routers that have dynamic WAN IP addresses.

Regardless of the ID type and content configuration, the NBG5715 does not allow you to save multiple active rules with overlapping local and remote IP addresses.

With main mode (see Section 18.7.4 on page 138), the ID type and content are encrypted to provide identity protection. In this case the NBG5715 can only distinguish between up to 12 different incoming SAs that connect from remote IPSec routers that have dynamic WAN IP addresses. The NBG5715 can distinguish up to 48 incoming SAs because you can select between three encryption algorithms (DES, 3DES and AES), two authentication algorithms (MD5 and SHA1) and eight key groups when you configure a VPN rule (see Section 18.4 on page 123). The ID type and content act as an extra level of identification for incoming SAs.

The type of ID can be a domain name, an IP address or an e-mail address. The content is the IP address, domain name, or e-mail address.

LOCAL ID TYPE=	CONTENT=			
IP	Type the IP address of your computer.			
DNS	Type a domain name (up to 31 characters) by which to identify this NBG5715.			
E-mail	Type an e-mail address (up to 31 characters) by which to identify this NBG5715.			
	The domain name or e-mail address that you use in the Local ID Content field is used for identification purposes only and does not need to be a real domain name or e-mail address.			

 Table 60
 Local ID Type and Content Fields

18.7.7.1 ID Type and Content Examples

Two IPSec routers must have matching ID type and content configuration in order to set up a VPN tunnel.

The two NBG5715s in this example can complete negotiation and establish a VPN tunnel.

NBG5715 A	NBG5715 B
Local ID type: E-mail	Local ID type: IP
Local ID content: tom@yourcompany.com	Local ID content: 1.1.1.2
Remote ID type: IP	Remote ID type: E-mail
Remote ID content: 1.1.1.2	Remote ID content: tom@yourcompany.com

 Table 61
 Matching ID Type and Content Configuration Example

The two NBG5715s in this example cannot complete their negotiation because NBG5715 B's Local ID type is IP, but NBG5715 A's Remote ID type is set to E-mail. An "ID mismatched" message displays in the IPSEC LOG.

NBG5715 A	NBG5715 B
Local ID type: IP	Local ID type: IP
Local ID content: 1.1.1.10	Local ID content: 1.1.1.2
Remote ID type: E-mail	Remote ID type: IP
Remote ID content: aa@yahoo.com	Remote ID content: 1.1.1.0

Table 62 Mismatching ID Type and Content Configuration Example

18.7.8 Pre-Shared Key

A pre-shared key identifies a communicating party during a phase 1 IKE negotiation (see Section 18.7.3 on page 137 for more on IKE phases). It is called "pre-shared" because you have to share it with another party before you can communicate with them over a secure connection.

18.7.9 Diffie-Hellman (DH) Key Groups

Diffie-Hellman (DH) is a public-key cryptography protocol that allows two parties to establish a shared secret over an unsecured communications channel. Diffie-Hellman is used within IKE SA setup to establish session keys. 768-bit, 1024-bit 1536-bit, 2048-bit, and 3072-bit Diffie-Hellman groups are supported. Upon completion of the Diffie-Hellman exchange, the two peers have a shared secret, but the IKE SA is not authenticated. For authentication, use pre-shared keys.

Bandwidth Management

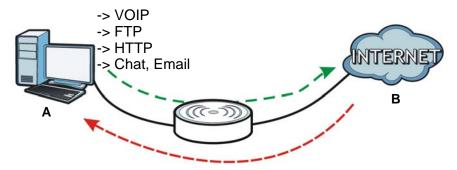
19.1 Overview

This chapter contains information about configuring bandwidth management and editing rules.

ZyXEL's Bandwidth Management allows you to specify bandwidth management rules based on an application.

In the figure below, uplink traffic goes from the LAN device (**A**) to the WAN device (**B**). Bandwidth management is applied before sending the packets out to the WAN. Downlink traffic comes back from the WAN device (**B**) to the LAN device (**A**). Bandwidth management is applied before sending the traffic out to LAN.

Figure 87 Bandwidth Management Example



You can allocate specific amounts of bandwidth capacity (bandwidth budgets) to individual applications (like VoIP, Web, FTP, and E-mail for example).

19.2 What You Can Do this Chapter

- Use the General screen to enable bandwidth management (Section 19.4 on page 144).
- Use the **Advanced** screen to configure bandwidth managements rule for the pre-defined services and applications (Section 19.5 on page 144).

19.3 What You Need To Know

The sum of the bandwidth allotments that apply to the WAN interface (LAN to WAN, WLAN to WAN) must be less than or equal to the **Upstream Bandwidth** that you configure in the **Bandwidth Management Advanced** screen (Section 19.5 on page 144).

The sum of the bandwidth allotments that apply to the LAN interface (WAN to LAN, WAN to WLAN) must be less than or equal to the **Downstream Bandwidth** that you configure in the **Bandwidth Management Advanced** screen Section 19.5 on page 144.

19.4 General Screen

Use this screen to have the NBG5715 apply bandwidth management.

Click Management > Bandwidth MGMT to open the bandwidth management General screen.

Figure 88	Management >	Bandwidth	MGMT	>	General
-----------	--------------	-----------	------	---	---------

General Advance	
Service Management	
	Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
Enable Bandwidth Management	This field allows you to have NBG5715 apply bandwidth management.	
Management	Enable bandwidth management to give traffic that matches a bandwidth rule priority over traffic that does not match a bandwidth rule.	
	Enabling bandwidth management also allows you to control the maximum or minimum amounts of bandwidth that can be used by traffic that matches a bandwidth rule.	
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings.	
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.	

Table 63	Management >	Bandwidth	MGMT	>	General

19.5 Advance Screen

Use this screen to configure bandwidth management rules for the pre-defined services or applications.

You can also use this screen to configure bandwidth management rule for other services or applications that are not on the pre-defined list of NBG5715. Additionally, you can define the source and destination IP addresses and port for a service or application.

Note: The two tables shown in this screen can be configured and applied at the same time.

Click **Management** > **Bandwidth MGMT** > **Advance** to open the bandwidth management **Advanced** screen.

	ent Bandwidth						
Upstrea	am Bandwidth	(kbps)					
Downst	tream Bandwid	dth (kbps)					
cation L	list						
Appli	lication List						
#	Prior	rity	Category		Service		
1	4	- c	Same Console	~	XBox Live		
				1	PlayStation		
				1	MSN Game Zone		
				~	Battlenet		
2	7	•	VoIP	1	VoIP		
3	5	 Ins 	stant Messenger	2	🔽 Instant Messenger		
4	6	*	Web Surfing	V	✓ Web Surfing		
5	3		FTP	~	✓ FTP		
6	2	-	E-Mail	•	E-Mail		
7	1	-	Others				
-	d Service r-defined Servio	ice					
#	Enable	Direction	Service Name		Category	Mo	dify
1		From LAN&WLAN		1	Game Console 💌	2	Ĵ.
2		From LAN&WLAN			Game Console 💌	2	T
3		From LAN&WLAN			Game Console 💌	2	Ū.
4		From LAN&WLAN			Game Console 💌	2	Ū
5		From LAN&WLAN			Game Console 💌	2	Û
6		From LAN&WLAN			Game Console 💌	2	Ū.
7		From LAN&WLAN			Game Console 💌		Ĵ.
		From LAN&WLAN -			Game Console 💌	2	

м LUL MONT

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION				
Management Band	Management Bandwidth				
Upstream Bandwidth	Select the total amount of bandwidth (from 64 Kilobits to 32 Megabits) that you want to dedicate to uplink traffic.				
	This is traffic from LAN/WLAN to WAN.				
Downstream Bandwidth	Select the total amount of bandwidth (from 64 Kilobits to 32 Megabits) that you want to dedicate to uplink traffic.				
	This is traffic from WAN to LAN/WLAN.				
Application List	Use this table to allocate specific amounts of bandwidth based on a pre-defined service.				
#	This is the number of an individual bandwidth management rule.				

LABEL	DESCRIPTION			
Priority	Select a priority from the drop down list box. The lower the number, the higher the priority.			
	• Select higher priority for voice traffic or video that is especially sensitive to jitter (jitter is the variations in delay).			
	 Select medium priority for "excellent effort" or better than best effort and would include important business traffic that can tolerate some delay. Select lower priority for non-critical "background" traffic such as bulk 			
	transfers that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users.			
Category	This is the category where a service belongs.			
Service	This is the name of the service.			
	Select the check box to have the NBG5715 apply this bandwidth management rule.			
User-defined Serv	ice			
User-defined Service	Use this table to allocate specific amounts of bandwidth to specific applications or services you specify.			
#	This is the number of an individual bandwidth management rule.			
Enable	Select this check box to have the NBG5715 apply this bandwidth management rule.			
Direction	From WAN applies bandwidth management to traffic from LAN/WLAN to WAN (i.e., uplink).			
	From LAN&WLAN applies bandwidth management to traffic that the NBG5715 forwards to both the LAN and the WLAN.			
Service Name	Enter a descriptive name for the bandwidth management rule.			
Category	Select a the category where a service belongs.			
Modify	Click the Edit icon to open the Rule Configuration screen. Modify an existing rule or create a new rule in the Rule Configuration screen. See Section 19.5.1 on page 146 for more information.			
	Click the Remove icon to delete a rule.			
Direction	Select To LAN&WLAN to apply bandwidth management to traffic from WAN to LAN and WLAN.			
	Select To WAN to apply bandwidth management to traffic from LAN/WLAN to WAN.			
Service Name	Enter a descriptive name for the bandwidth management rule.			
Category	This is the category where a service belongs.			
Modify	Click the Edit icon to open the Rule Configuration screen. Modify an existing rule or create a new rule in the Rule Configuration screen. See Section 19.5.1 on page 146 for more information.			
	Click the Remove icon to delete a rule.			
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings.			
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.			

Table 64 Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Advance (continued)

19.5.1 Rule Configuration: User Defined Service Rule Configuration

If you want to edit a bandwidth management rule for other applications or services, click the **Edit** icon in the **User-defined Service** table of the **Advanced** screen. The following screen displays.

igue ou Banawati Horri Raie et	
Rule Configuration> -	
Destination Address	
Destination Subnet Netmask	
Destination Port	
Source Address	
Source Subnet Netmask	
Source Port	
Protocol	TCP -
	·
	Apply Cancel

Figure 90 Bandwidth MGMT Rule Configuration: User-defined Service

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Destination Address	Enter the IP address of the destination computer. The NBG5715 applies bandwidth management to the service or application that is entering this computer.
Destination Subnet Netmask	Enter the subnet netmask of the destination of the traffic for which the bandwidth management rule applies.
Destination Port	This is the port number of the destination that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.
Source Address	Enter the IP address of the computer that initializes traffic for the application or service. The NBG5715 applies bandwidth management to traffic initiating from this computer.
Source Subnet Netmask	Enter the subnet netmask of the computer initiating the traffic for which the bandwidth management rule applies.
Source Port	This is the port number of the source that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.
Protocol	Select the protocol (TCP , UDP) for which the bandwidth management rule applies.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

 Table 65
 Bandwidth MGMT Rule Configuration: User-defined Service

See Appendix E on page 237 for commonly used services and port numbers

Remote Management

20.1 Overview

This chapter provides information on the Remote Management screens.

Remote Management allows you to manage your NBG5715 from a remote location through the following interfaces:

- LAN and WAN
- LAN only
- WAN only

Note: The NBG5715 is managed using the Web Configurator.

20.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the WWW screen to define the interface/s from which the NBG5715 can be managed remotely using the web and specify a secure client that can manage the NBG5715 (Section 20.4 on page 150).
- Use the **TELNET** screen to define the interface/s from which the NBG5715 can be managed remotely using Telnet service and specify a secure client that can manage the NBG5715 (Section 20.5 on page 150).

20.3 What You Need to Know

Remote management over LAN or WAN will not work when:

- 1 The IP address in the **Secured Client IP Address** field (Section 20.4 on page 150) does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the NBG5715 will disconnect the session immediately.
- 2 There is already another remote management session. You may only have one remote management session running at one time.
- 3 There is a firewall rule that blocks it.

20.3.1 Remote Management and NAT

When NAT is enabled:

- Use the NBG5715's WAN IP address when configuring from the WAN.
- Use the NBG5715's LAN IP address when configuring from the LAN.

20.3.2 System Timeout

There is a default system management idle timeout of five minutes (three hundred seconds). The NBG5715 automatically logs you out if the management session remains idle for longer than this timeout period. The management session does not time out when a statistics screen is polling. You can change the timeout period in the **System** screen

20.4 WWW Screen

To change your NBG5715's remote management settings, click **Management** > **Remote MGMT** to open the **WWW** screen.

Figure 91 Management > Remote MGMT > WWW

WWW Telnet	
Port :	80
Access Status :	LAN & WAN
Secured Client IP Address :	All O Selected
Note:	
1.For <u>UPNP</u> to function normally, the HTTP s 2: You may also need to create a <u>Firewall</u> ru	service must be available for LAN computers using UPnP. Ile
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Access Status	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the NBG5715 using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	Select All to allow all computes to access the NBG5715. Otherwise, check Selected and specify the IP address of the computer that can access the NBG5715.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 66 Management > Remote MGMT > WWW

20.5 Telnet Screen

To change your NBG5715's remote management settings, click **Management > Remote MGMT > Telnet** to open the **Telnet** screen.

Figure 92	Management	>	Remote	MGMT	>	Telnet
i igai o oz	rianagement	-	Remote	110111	-	renice

WWW Telnet	
Port : Access Status : Secured Client IP Address :	23 LAN & WAN ▼ ⓒ All C Selected
Note: You may also need to create a <u>Firewall</u> rule	
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Access Status	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the NBG5715 using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	Select AII to allow all computes to access the NBG5715. Otherwise, check Selected and specify the IP address of the computer that can access the NBG5715.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

 Table 67
 Management > Remote MGMT > Telnet

Universal Plug-and-Play (UPnP)

21.1 Overview

This chapter introduces the UPnP feature in the web configurator.

Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) is a distributed, open networking standard that uses TCP/IP for simple peer-to-peer network connectivity between devices. A UPnP device can dynamically join a network, obtain an IP address, convey its capabilities and learn about other devices on the network. In turn, a device can leave a network smoothly and automatically when it is no longer in use.

21.2 What You Need to Know

UPnP hardware is identified as an icon in the Network Connections folder (Windows XP). Each UPnP compatible device installed on your network will appear as a separate icon. Selecting the icon of a UPnP device will allow you to access the information and properties of that device.

21.2.1 NAT Traversal

UPnP NAT traversal automates the process of allowing an application to operate through NAT. UPnP network devices can automatically configure network addressing, announce their presence in the network to other UPnP devices and enable exchange of simple product and service descriptions. NAT traversal allows the following:

- Dynamic port mapping
- Learning public IP addresses
- Assigning lease times to mappings

Windows Messenger is an example of an application that supports NAT traversal and UPnP.

See the NAT chapter for more information on NAT.

21.2.2 Cautions with UPnP

The automated nature of NAT traversal applications in establishing their own services and opening firewall ports may present network security issues. Network information and configuration may also be obtained and modified by users in some network environments.

When a UPnP device joins a network, it announces its presence with a multicast message. For security reasons, the NBG5715 allows multicast messages on the LAN only.

All UPnP-enabled devices may communicate freely with each other without additional configuration. Disable UPnP if this is not your intention.

21.3 UPnP Screen

Use this screen to enable UPnP on your NBG5715.

Click **Management** > **UPnP** to display the screen shown next.

	Management > UPnP
UPnP	
UPnP :	Enabled C Disabled
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 68 Management > UPnP	
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
UPnP	Select Enable to activate UPnP. Be aware that anyone could use a UPnP application to open the web configurator's login screen without entering the NBG5715's IP address (although you must still enter the password to access the web configurator).
Apply	Click Apply to save the setting to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to return to the previously saved settings.

Table 68 Management > UPnP

21.4 Technical Reference

The sections show examples of using UPnP.

21.4.1 Using UPnP in Windows XP Example

This section shows you how to use the UPnP feature in Windows XP. You must already have UPnP installed in Windows XP and UPnP activated on the NBG5715.

Make sure the computer is connected to a LAN port of the NBG5715. Turn on your computer and the NBG5715.

21.4.1.1 Auto-discover Your UPnP-enabled Network Device

- 1 Click start and Control Panel. Double-click Network Connections. An icon displays under Internet Gateway.
- 2 Right-click the icon and select **Properties**.

Figure 94 Network Connections



3 In the Internet Connection Properties window, click Settings to see the port mappings there were automatically created.

Figure 95 Internet Connection Properties

Inter	net Conne	ction Prop	erties		?
ieneral					
Conne	ct to the Inter	rnet using:			
•	Internet Conn	nection			
		ows you to co on another co		: Internel	through a
🖌 Sh	ow icon in not	tification area	when conr	lected	Settings

You may edit or delete the port mappings or click Add to manually add port mappings.
 Figure 96 Internet Connection Properties: Advanced Settings

ervices	
100888	ng on your network that Internet users can
iervices 🗹 managa (192-168-1 G	55 9610) 16009 TCP
 memege (192 168.1.6 memege (192 168.1.8 	
 marmage (192.168.1.8) 	

Figure 97 Internet Connection Properties: Advanced Settings: Add



Note: When the UPnP-enabled device is disconnected from your computer, all port mappings will be deleted automatically.

5 Select **Show icon in notification area when connected** option and click **OK**. An icon displays in the system tray.

Figure 98 System Tray Icon

Internet Connection is now connected Click here for more information	×	
	12	6:43 PM

6 Double-click on the icon to display your current Internet connection status.

Figure 99 Internet Connection Status

eneral		
Internet Gatewa	y .	
Status:		Connected
Duration:		00:00:56
Speed:		100.0 Mbps
Activity		
Internet	Internet Gateway	My Computer
() —	— 📢 —	<u> </u>
Packets:		
Sent: Received:	8 5,943	618 746
Properties	Disable	

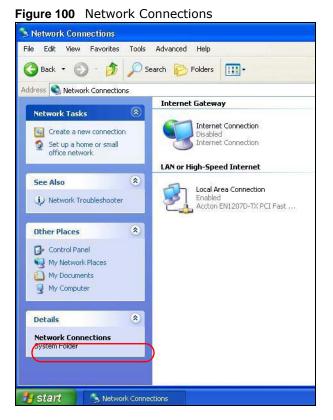
21.4.2 Web Configurator Easy Access

With UPnP, you can access the web-based configurator on the NBG5715 without finding out the IP address of the NBG5715 first. This comes helpful if you do not know the IP address of the NBG5715.

Follow the steps below to access the web configurator.

1 Click Start and then Control Panel.

- Double-click Network Connections. 2
- 3 Select My Network Places under Other Places.



- An icon with the description for each UPnP-enabled device displays under Local Network. 4
- Right-click on the icon for your NBG5715 and select Invoke. The web configurator login screen 5 displays.



Figure 101 Network Connections: My Network Places

Right-click on the icon for your NBG5715 and select Properties. A properties window displays with 6 basic information about the NBG5715.

Figure 102 Network Connections: My Network Places: Properties: Example

<u> </u>	ZyXEL Internet Sharing Gateway
Manufacturer:	ZyXEL
Model Name:	ZyXEL Internet Sharing Gateway
Model Number:	Model Number:
Description:	ZyXEL Internet Sharing Gateway
Device Address:	http://192.168.1.1/

Maintenance

22.1 Overview

This chapter provides information on the Maintenance screens.

22.2 What You Can Do in this Chapter

- Use the **General** screen to set the timeout period of the management session (Section 22.3 on page 159).
- Use the **Password** screen to change your NBG5715's system password (Section 22.4 on page 160).
- Use the **Time** screen to change your NBG5715's time and date (Section 22.5 on page 161).
- Use the **Firmware Upgrade** screen to upload firmware to your NBG5715 (Section 22.6 on page 162).
- Use the **Backup/Restore** screen to view information related to factory defaults, backup configuration, and restoring configuration (Section 22.7 on page 163).
- Use the Language screen to change the language for the Web Configurator (Section 22.8 on page 165).

22.3 General Screen

Use this screen to set the management session timeout period. Click **Maintenance** > **General**. The following screen displays.

Figure 103 Maintenance > General

General	
Quatern Marrie I	0
System Name :	OpenWrt
Domain Name :	zyxel.com
Administrator Inactivity Timer :	60 (minutes, 0 means no timeout)
	Analy
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	System Name is a unique name to identify the NBG5715 in an Ethernet network.
Domain Name	Enter the domain name you want to give to the NBG5715.
Administrator Inactivity Timer	Type how many minutes a management session can be left idle before the session times out. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks. A value of "0" means a management session never times out, no matter how long it has been left idle (not recommended).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

 Table 69
 Maintenance > General

22.4 Password Screen

It is strongly recommended that you change your NBG5715's password.

If you forget your NBG5715's password (or IP address), you will need to reset the device. See Section 22.7 on page 163 for details.

Click **Maintenance** > **Password**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 104 Maintenance > Password

Password Setup	
Password Setup Old Password : New Password : Retype to Confirm :	
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Password Setup	Change your NBG5715's password (recommended) using the fields as shown.
Old Password	Type the default password or the existing password you use to access the system in this field.
New Password	Type your new system password (up to 30 characters). Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Retype to Confirm	Type the new password again in this field.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

 Table 70
 Maintenance > Password

22.5 Time Setting Screen

Use this screen to configure the NBG5715's time based on your local time zone. To change your NBG5715's time and date, click **Maintenance** > **Time**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 105 Maintenance > Time

Time Setting	
	06:31:07 1970-01-01
Time and Date Setup ^O Manual New Time (hh:mm:ss) : New Date (yyy/mm/dd) : [•] Get from Time Server User Defined Time Server Address :	time.stdtime.gov.tw
Time Zone Setup Time Zone : Daylight Savings Start Date 01 • of January • at 0 End Date 01 • of	(GMT-12:00) International Date Line West
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
Current Time and Date		
Current Time	This field displays the time of your NBG5715.	
	Each time you reload this page, the NBG5715 synchronizes the time with the time server.	
Current Date	This field displays the date of your NBG5715.	
	Each time you reload this page, the NBG5715 synchronizes the date with the time server.	
Current Time and Date		
Manual	Select this radio button to enter the time and date manually. If you configure a new time and date, Time Zone and Daylight Saving at the same time, the new time and date you entered has priority and the Time Zone and Daylight Saving settings do not affect it.	
New Time (hh:mm:ss)	This field displays the last updated time from the time server or the last time configured manually.	
(1111111135)	When you select Manual , enter the new time in this field and then click Apply .	
New Date (yyyy/mm/dd)	This field displays the last updated date from the time server or the last date configured manually.	
(yyyy)	When you select Manual , enter the new date in this field and then click Apply .	

Table 71 Maintenance > Time

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Get from Time Server	Select this radio button to have the NBG5715 get the time and date from the time server you specified below.
User Defined Time Server Address	Select User Defined Time Server Address and enter the IP address or URL (up to extended ASCII characters in length) of your time server. Check with your ISP/network administrator if you are unsure of this information.
Time Zone Setup	
Time Zone	Choose the time zone of your location. This will set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Daylight Savings	Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening.
	Select this option if you use Daylight Saving Time.
Start Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected Daylight Savings . The o'clock field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:
	Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the first Sunday of April. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select First, Sunday, April and type 2 in the o'clock field.
	Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Last , Sunday , March . The time you type in the o'clock field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 2 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).
End Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected Daylight Savings . The o'clock field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:
	Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the last Sunday of October. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select Last , Sunday , October and type 2 in the o'clock field.
	Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Last , Sunday , October . The time you type in the o'clock field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 2 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the NBG5715.

Table 71	Maintenance	> Time ((continued))
----------	-------------	----------	-------------	---

22.6 Firmware Upgrade Screen

Find firmware at <u>www.zyxel.com</u> in a file that (usually) uses the system model name with a "*.bin" extension, e.g., "NBG5715.bin". The upload process uses HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and may take up to two minutes. After a successful upload, the system will reboot.

Click **Maintenance** > **Firmware Upgrade**. Follow the instructions in this screen to upload firmware to your NBG5715.

Figure 106 Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade

Firmware Upgrade	
	e firmware, browse to the location of the binary (.BIN) upgrade file and click Upload. Upgrade files can be downloaded ile is compressed (.ZIP file), you must first extract the binary (.BIN) file. In some cases, you may need to reconfigure.
File Path:	Browse
	Upload

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

 Table 72
 Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse to find it.
Browse	Click Browse to find the .bin file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.zip) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click Upload to begin the upload process. This process may take up to two minutes.

Note: Do not turn off the NBG5715 while firmware upload is in progress!

After you see the **Firmware Upload In Process** screen, wait two minutes before logging into the NBG5715 again.

The NBG5715 automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

Figure 107 Network Temporarily Disconnected



After two minutes, log in again and check your new firmware version in the Status screen.

If the upload was not successful, an error message appears. Click **Return** to go back to the **Firmware Upgrade** screen.

22.7 Backup/Restore Screen

Backup configuration allows you to back up (save) the NBG5715's current configuration to a file on your computer. Once your NBG5715 is configured and functioning properly, it is highly recommended that you back up your configuration file before making configuration changes. The backup configuration file will be useful in case you need to return to your previous settings.

Restore configuration allows you to upload a new or previously saved configuration file from your computer to your NBG5715.

Click **Maintenance** > **Backup/Restore**. Information related to factory defaults, backup configuration, and restoring configuration appears as shown next.

Figure 108 Maintenance > Backup/Restore

ackup / Restore	
Backup Configuration Click Backup to save the current configuration of your	system to your computer. Backup
Restore Configuration	
To restore a previously saved configuration file to you	r system, browse to the location of the configuration file and click Upload.
File Path :	Browse Upload
Back to Factory Defaults	
Back to Factory Defaults Click Reset to clear all user-entered configuration info	mation and retur to factory defaults. After resetting, the
Construction of the Construction of	rmation and retur to factory defaults. After resetting, the

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Backup	Click Backup to save the NBG5715's current configuration to your computer.
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse to find it.
Browse	Click Browse to find the file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.ZIP) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click Upload to begin the upload process.
	Note: Do not turn off the NBG5715 while configuration file upload is in progress.
	After you see a "configuration upload successful" screen, you must then wait one minute before logging into the NBG5715 again. The NBG5715 automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect.
	If you see an error screen, click Back to return to the Backup/Restore screen.
Reset	Pressing the Reset button in this section clears all user-entered configuration information and returns the NBG5715 to its factory defaults.
	You can also press the RESET button on the rear panel to reset the factory defaults of your NBG5715. Refer to the chapter about introducing the Web Configurator for more information on the RESET button.

Table 73Maintenance > Backup/Restore

Note: If you uploaded the default configuration file you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default NBG5715 IP address (192.168.1.2). See Appendix C on page 195 for details on how to set up your computer's IP address.

22.8 The Language Screen

Use this screen to change the language for the Web Configurator.

Select the language you prefer and click **Apply**. The Web Configurator language changes after a while without restarting the NBG5715.

Figure 109

Language	
Language selection :	English
	Apply Cancel

Troubleshooting

23.1 Overview

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter. The potential problems are divided into the following categories.

- Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs
- NBG5715 Access and Login
- Internet Access
- Resetting the NBG5715 to Its Factory Defaults
- Wireless Router Troubleshooting
- USB Device Problems
- ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Problems

23.2 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs

The NBG5715 does not turn on. None of the LEDs turn on.

- 1 Make sure you are using the power adaptor or cord included with the NBG5715.
- 2 Make sure the power adaptor or cord is connected to the NBG5715 and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure the power source is turned on.
- 3 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the NBG5715.
- 4 Make sure the **LED** button on the side panel of the NBG5715 is at the **ON** position. If the **LED** button is turned off, the **Power** LED should be still on for you to determin if the NBG5715 is receiving power.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

One of the LEDs does not behave as expected.

1 Make sure you understand the normal behavior of the LED. See Section 1.5 on page 17.

- 2 Check the hardware connections. See the Quick Start Guide.
- 3 Inspect your cables for damage. Contact the vendor to replace any damaged cables.
- 4 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor to the NBG5715.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

23.3 NBG5715 Access and Login

I don't know the IP address of my NBG5715.

- 1 The default IP address is **192.168.1.1**.
- 2 If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, you might get the IP address of the NBG5715 by looking up the IP address of the default gateway for your computer. To do this in most Windows computers, click Start > Run, enter cmd, and then enter ipconfig. The IP address of the Default Gateway might be the IP address of the NBG5715 (it depends on the network), so enter this IP address in your Internet browser.Set your device to Router Mode, login (see the Quick Start Guide for instructions) and go to the Device Information table in the Status screen. Your NBG5715's IP address is available in the Device Information table.
 - If the DHCP setting under LAN information is None, your device has a fixed IP address.
 - If the **DHCP** setting under **LAN** information is **Client**, then your device receives an IP address from a DHCP server on the network.
- 3 If your NBG5715 is a DHCP client, you can find your IP address from the DHCP server. This information is only available from the DHCP server which allocates IP addresses on your network. Find this information directly from the DHCP server or contact your system administrator for more information.
- 4 Reset your NBG5715 to change all settings back to their default. This means your current settings are lost. See Section 23.5 on page 171 in the Troubleshooting for information on resetting your NBG5715.

I forgot the password.

- 1 The default password is **1234**.
- 2 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See Section 23.5 on page 171.

I cannot see or access the **Login** screen in the Web Configurator.

- 1 Make sure you are using the correct IP address.
 - The default IP address is 192.168.1.1.
 - If you changed the IP address (Section 12.4 on page 92), use the new IP address.
 - If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, see the troubleshooting suggestions for I don't know the IP address of my NBG5715.
- 2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide.
- 3 Make sure your Internet browser does not block pop-up windows and has JavaScript and Java enabled. See Appendix A on page 175.
- 4 Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the NBG5715. (If you know that there are routers between your computer and the NBG5715, skip this step.)
 - If there is a DHCP server on your network, make sure your computer is using a dynamic IP address. See Section 13.2 on page 95.
 - If there is no DHCP server on your network, make sure your computer's IP address is in the same subnet as the NBG5715. See Appendix B on page 186.
- 5 Reset the device to its factory defaults, and try to access the NBG5715 with the default IP address. See Chapter 22 on page 163.
- **6** If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestions

- Try to access the NBG5715 using another service, such as Telnet. If you can access the NBG5715, check the remote management settings and firewall rules to find out why the NBG5715 does not respond to HTTP.
- If your computer is connected to the **WAN** port or is connected wirelessly, use a computer that is connected to a **LAN/ETHERNET** port.

I can see the Login screen, but I cannot log in to the NBG5715.

- 1 Make sure you have entered the password correctly. The default password is **1234**. This field is case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 2 You cannot log in to the Web Configurator while someone is using Telnet to access the NBG5715. Log out of the NBG5715 in the other session, or ask the person who is logged in to log out.
- **3** This can happen when you fail to log out properly from your last session. Try logging in again after 5 minutes.
- 4 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the NBG5715.
- 5 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See Section 23.5 on page 171.

23.4 Internet Access

I cannot access the Internet.

- 1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide.
- 2 Make sure you entered your ISP account information correctly in the WAN screen. These fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 3 If you are trying to access the Internet wirelessly, make sure the wireless settings in the wireless client are the same as the settings in the AP.
- 4 Disconnect all the cables from your device, and follow the directions in the Quick Start Guide again.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.

I cannot access the Internet anymore. I had access to the Internet (with the NBG5715), but my Internet connection is not available anymore.

- 1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and Section 1.5 on page 17.
- **2** Reboot the NBG5715.
- 3 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.

The Internet connection is slow or intermittent.

- 1 There might be a lot of traffic on the network. Look at the LEDs, and check Section 1.5 on page 17. If the NBG5715 is sending or receiving a lot of information, try closing some programs that use the Internet, especially peer-to-peer applications.
- 2 Check the signal strength. If the signal strength is low, try moving the NBG5715 closer to the AP if possible, and look around to see if there are any devices that might be interfering with the wireless network (for example, microwaves, other wireless networks, and so on).
- **3** Reboot the NBG5715.
- 4 If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestion

• Check the settings for QoS. If it is disabled, you might consider activating it.

23.5 Resetting the NBG5715 to Its Factory Defaults

If you reset the NBG5715, you lose all of the changes you have made. The NBG5715 re-loads its default settings, and the password resets to **1234**. You have to make all of your changes again.

You will lose all of your changes when you push the **RESET** button.

To reset the NBG5715:

- 1 Make sure the power LED is on.
- 2 Press the **RESET** button for longer than 1 second to restart/reboot the NBG5715.
- 3 Press the RESET button for longer than five seconds to set the NBG5715 back to its factory-default configurations.

If the NBG5715 restarts automatically, wait for the NBG5715 to finish restarting, and log in to the Web Configurator. The password is "1234".

If the NBG5715 does not restart automatically, disconnect and reconnect the NBG5715's power. Then, follow the directions above again.

23.6 Wireless Router Troubleshooting

I cannot access the NBG5715 or ping any computer from the WLAN.

- 1 Make sure the wireless LAN is enabled on the NBG5715. Check if the WLAN button is at the ON position. Or you can enable the wireless LAN in the Network > Wireless LAN 2.4G/5G > General screen.
- 2 Make sure the wireless adapter on the wireless station is working properly.
- 3 Make sure the wireless adapter installed on your computer is IEEE 802.11 compatible and supports the same wireless standard as the NBG5715.
- 4 Make sure your computer (with a wireless adapter installed) is within the transmission range of the NBG5715.
- 5 Check that both the NBG5715 and your wireless station are using the same wireless and wireless security settings.

- 6 Make sure traffic between the WLAN and the LAN is not blocked by the firewall on the NBG5715.
- 7 Make sure you allow the NBG5715 to be remotely accessed through the WLAN interface. Check your remote management settings.
 - See the chapter on Wireless LAN in the User's Guide for more information.

I can access the Internet, but I cannot open my network folders.

If you cannot access a network folder, make sure your account has access rights to the folder you are trying to open.

What factors may cause intermittent or unstabled wireless connection? How can I solve this problem?

The following factors may cause interference:

- Obstacles: walls, ceilings, furniture, and so on.
- Building Materials: metal doors, aluminum studs.
- Electrical devices: microwaves, monitors, electric motors, cordless phones, and other wireless devices.

To optimize the speed and quality of your wireless connection, you can:

- Move your wireless device closer to the AP if the signal strength is low.
- Reduce wireless interference that may be caused by other wireless networks or surrounding wireless electronics such as cordless phones.
- Place the AP where there are minimum obstacles (such as walls and ceilings) between the AP and the wireless client.
- Reduce the number of wireless clients connecting to the same AP simultaneously, or add additional APs if necessary.
- Try closing some programs that use the Internet, especially peer-to-peer applications. If the wireless client is sending or receiving a lot of information, it may have too many programs open that use the Internet.
- Position the antennas for best reception. If the AP is placed on a table or floor, point the antennas upwards. If the AP is placed at a high position, point the antennas downwards. Try pointing the antennas in different directions and check which provides the strongest signal to the wireless clients.

23.7 USB Device Problems

I cannot access or see a USB device that is connected to the NBG5715.

- 1 Be sure to install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility (for NetUSB functionality) first from the included disc, or download the latest version from the zyxel.com website.
- 2 Disconnect the problematic USB device, then reconnect it to the NBG5715.
- 3 Ensure that the USB device in question has power.
- 4 Check your cable connections.
- **5** Restart the NBG5715 by disconnecting the power and then reconnecting it.
- **6** If the USB device requires a special driver, install the driver from the installation disc that came with the device. After driver installation, reconnect the USB device to the NBG5715 and try to connect to it again with your computer.

If the problem persists, contact your vendor.

What kind of USB devices do the NBG5715 support?

1 It is strongly recommended to use version 2.0 or lower USB storage devices (such as memory sticks, USB hard drives) and/or USB devices (such as USB printers). Other USB products are not guaranteed to function properly with the NBG5715.

23.8 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Problems

I cannot install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility.

- 1 Make sure that the set up program is one required for your operating system.
- 2 Install the latest patches and updates for your operating system.
- **3** Check the zyxel.com's Download Library site and look for a newer version of the utility software under the device's model name.

Pop-up Windows, JavaScript and Java Permissions

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

Note: The screens used below belong to Internet Explorer version 6, 7 and 8. Screens for other Internet Explorer versions may vary.

Internet Explorer Pop-up Blockers

You may have to disable pop-up blocking to log into your device.

Either disable pop-up blocking (enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2) or allow pop-up blocking and create an exception for your device's IP address.

Disable Pop-up Blockers

In Internet Explorer, select Tools, Pop-up Blocker and then select Turn Off Pop-up Blocker.
 Figure 110 Pop-up Blocker



You can also check if pop-up blocking is disabled in the Pop-up Blocker section in the Privacy tab.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select Tools, Internet Options, Privacy.
- 2 Clear the **Block pop-ups** check box in the **Pop-up Blocker** section of the screen. This disables any web pop-up blockers you may have enabled.

General	Security	Privacy	Content	Connections	Programs	Advanced
Settin		he slider ti	o select a	privacy setting	for the Interr	net
	- Blo priv - Blo - Blo - Re	acy policy ocks third- rmation wi estricts first	party cook thout your t-party coo	ties that do not ties that use pe implicit consen thies that use pr cit consent	rsonally iden t	ntifiable
Pop-u	Sites Ip Blocker Preven		mport o-up windo	Advanced.		fault
	Blor	ck pop-up	\$		Setti	ngs

Figure 111 Internet Options: Privacy

3 Click Apply to save this setting.

Enable Pop-up Blockers with Exceptions

Alternatively, if you only want to allow pop-up windows from your device, see the following steps.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools**, **Internet Options** and then the **Privacy** tab.
- 2 Select Settings...to open the Pop-up Blocker Settings screen.

General	Security	Privacy	Content	Connections	Programs	Advanced
Settin	54	he slider ti	o select a	privacy setting	for the Interr	net
-	- Blo priv - Blo info - Re	acy policy ocks third- mation wi estricts first	party cook thout your t-party coo	ies that do not ies that use pe implicit conser kies that use p cit consent	ersonally ider It	itifiable
Pop-u	Sites Ip Blocker Preven		mport o-up windo) (Advanced		fault
0	Bloc	ck pop-up	s		Setti	ngs

Figure 112 Internet Options: Privacy

- **3** Type the IP address of your device (the web page that you do not want to have blocked) with the prefix "http://". For example, http://192.168.167.1.
- 4 Click Add to move the IP address to the list of Allowed sites.

Figure 113 Pop-up Blocker Settings

Pop-ups are currently blocked. You can Web sites by adding the site to the list be	
Address of Web site to allow:	a0w.
http://192.168.1.1	Add
Allowed sites:	
	Remove
	Remove Al
Notifications and Filter Level	
Play a sound when a pop-up is blocked.	
Show Information Bar when a pop-up is blocke	ed.
Filter Level:	
	199

- 5 Click Close to return to the **Privacy** screen.
- 6 Click **Apply** to save this setting.

JavaScript

If pages of the web configurator do not display properly in Internet Explorer, check that JavaScript are allowed.

1 In Internet Explorer, click **Tools**, **Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.

Figure 114 Internet Options: Security

Sele	et a Web content zone to specify its security settings.
1	nternet Local intranet Trusted sites Restricted sites
C Se	This zone contains all Web sites you Sites
-	Move the slider to set the security level for this zone.
-1	Safe browsing and still functional Safe browsing and still functional Prompts before downloading potentially unsafe content Unsigned ActiveX controls will not be downloaded Appropriate for most Internet sites
-	- Custom Level Default Level

- 2 Click the **Custom Level**... button.
- 3 Scroll down to Scripting.
- 4 Under Active scripting make sure that Enable is selected (the default).
- 5 Under Scripting of Java applets make sure that Enable is selected (the default).
- 6 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 115	Security	Settinas ·	- Java	Scripting
	occurrey	occurrgo	5 a • a	Company

ecurity Settings	?
Eettings:	
Scripting	
Active scripting	
O Disable	
Enable	
O Prompt	
Allow paste operations via script	
O Disable	
⊙ Enable	
O Prompt	
Scripting of Java applets	
O Disable	
Enable	
O Prompt	
13 Ucox Authoptication	The second se
Reset custom settings	
Reset to: Medium	Reset
	1 .
OK	Cancel

Java Permissions

- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools**, **Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.
- 2 Click the **Custom Level**... button.
- 3 Scroll down to Microsoft VM.
- 4 Under Java permissions make sure that a safety level is selected.
- 5 Click **OK** to close the window.

igure 116	Security	Settings	- Java	1
ecurity Set	tings			?
Settings:				
Ō	Disable Enable t download			2
0	Disable Enable Prompt			
	"t VM a permissions Custom			
0	Disable Jawa High safety Low safety)		
Miccollar 1	Medium safety			
Reset cust	om settings		2	
<u>R</u> eset to:	Medium		•	R <u>e</u> set
		0	ĸ	Cancel

JAVA (Sun)

- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools**, **Internet Options** and then the **Advanced** tab.
- 2 Make sure that Use Java 2 for <applet> under Java (Sun) is selected.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the window.

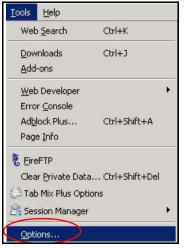
ternet Options	?
General Security Privacy Content Connections Programs	Advanced
Settings:	
Use inline AutoComplete Use Passive FTP (for firewall and DSL modem compatit Use smooth scrolling HTTP 1.1 settings Use HTTP 1.1 Use HTTP 1.1 through proxy connections Java (Sun) Use Java 2 v1.4.1_07 for <applet> (requires restart) Microsoft VM</applet>	nility)
 Java console enabled (requires restart) Java logging enabled JIT compiler for virtual machine enabled (requires restart Multimedia Always show Internet Explorer (5.0 or later) Radio toolba Don't display online media content in the media bar Enable Automatic Image Resizing 	
<u>R</u> estore	Defaults

Mozilla Firefox

Mozilla Firefox 2.0 screens are used here. Screens for other versions may vary slightly. The steps below apply to Mozilla Firefox 3.0 as well.

You can enable Java, Javascript and pop-ups in one screen. Click **Tools**, then click **Options** in the screen that appears.

Figure 118 Mozilla Firefox: TOOLS > Options



Click **Content** to show the screen below. Select the check boxes as shown in the following screen.

Figure 119 Mozilla Firefox Content Security

Options		0				
十 Main	Tabs	Content	Feeds	ون Privacy	Security	() Advanced
	įmages Ie <u>J</u> avas	windows automatically Script)			Exceptions Exceptions Advanced
Fonts & C	-	Times New Ron	nan	▼ 5	ize: 16	Advanced <u>C</u> olors
File Types Configure		refox handles (ertain ty:	bes of files		Manage
				ОК	Car	ncel Help

Opera

Opera 10 screens are used here. Screens for other versions may vary slightly.

Allowing Pop-Ups

From Opera, click **Tools**, then **Preferences**. In the **General** tab, go to **Choose how you prefer to handle pop-ups** and select **Open all pop-ups**.

Figure 120 Opera: Allowing Pop-Ups

Opera cap star		None Marco	
	t with your favorite Web pages or continue from	last time	
Startup	Continue from last time]	
Home page	http://portal.opera.com	- Use Curre	nt
	ou prefer to handle pop-ups		
Choose how yo	Open all pop-ups		
	Open all pop-ups	P	
	Open all pop-ups Open all pop-ups Open all pop-ups Open pop-ups in background	P	
	Open all pop-ups Open all pop-ups Open pop-ups in background Block unwanted pop-ups	P	
Pop-ups	Open all pop-ups Open all pop-ups Open all pop-ups Open pop-ups in background	P	

Enabling Java

From Opera, click **Tools**, then **Preferences**. In the **Advanced** tab, select **Content** from the leftside menu. Select the check boxes as shown in the following screen.

Tabs Browsing	Enable animated images	
Notifications	Enable sound in Web pages	
Content	Enable JavaScript JavaScript Option	i5
Fonts	Enable plug-ins	
Downloads	V	
Programs		
History	Style Options	
Cookies		
Security		
Security Network	Content settings can be adapted to each site	
1	Content settings can be adapted to each site Manage Site Preferences	

Figure 121 Opera: Enabling Java

To customize JavaScript behavior in the Opera browser, click JavaScript Options.

Figure 122 Opera: JavaScript Options

JavaScript Options	×
Allow resizing of windows	
Allow moving of windows	
Allow raising of windows	
Allow lowering of windows	
Allow changing of status field	
Allow scripts to detect context menu events	
✓ Allow script to hide address bar	
Open console on error	
User JavaScript folder	
	Choose
ОК	Cancel

Select the items you want Opera's JavaScript to apply.

IP Addresses and Subnetting

This appendix introduces IP addresses and subnet masks.

IP addresses identify individual devices on a network. Every networking device (including computers, servers, routers, printers, etc.) needs an IP address to communicate across the network. These networking devices are also known as hosts.

Subnet masks determine the maximum number of possible hosts on a network. You can also use subnet masks to divide one network into multiple sub-networks.

Introduction to IP Addresses

One part of the IP address is the network number, and the other part is the host ID. In the same way that houses on a street share a common street name, the hosts on a network share a common network number. Similarly, as each house has its own house number, each host on the network has its own unique identifying number - the host ID. Routers use the network number to send packets to the correct network, while the host ID determines to which host on the network the packets are delivered.

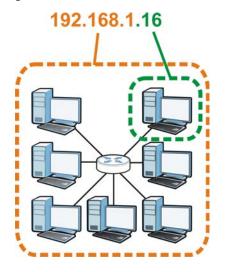
Structure

An IP address is made up of four parts, written in dotted decimal notation (for example, 192.168.1.1). Each of these four parts is known as an octet. An octet is an eight-digit binary number (for example 11000000, which is 192 in decimal notation).

Therefore, each octet has a possible range of 00000000 to 11111111 in binary, or 0 to 255 in decimal.

The following figure shows an example IP address in which the first three octets (192.168.1) are the network number, and the fourth octet (16) is the host ID.

Figure 123 Network Number and Host ID



How much of the IP address is the network number and how much is the host ID varies according to the subnet mask.

Subnet Masks

A subnet mask is used to determine which bits are part of the network number, and which bits are part of the host ID (using a logical AND operation). The term "subnet" is short for "sub-network".

A subnet mask has 32 bits. If a bit in the subnet mask is a "1" then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the network number. If a bit in the subnet mask is "0" then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the host ID.

The following example shows a subnet mask identifying the network number (in bold text) and host ID of an IP address (192.168.1.2 in decimal).

	1ST OCTET:	2ND OCTET:	3RD OCTET:	4TH OCTET
	(192)	(168)	(1)	(2)
IP Address (Binary)	11000000	10101000	0000001	0000010
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111	11111111	11111111	0000000
Network Number	11000000	10101000	00000001	
Host ID				0000010

 Table 74
 IP Address Network Number and Host ID Example

By convention, subnet masks always consist of a continuous sequence of ones beginning from the leftmost bit of the mask, followed by a continuous sequence of zeros, for a total number of 32 bits.

Subnet masks can be referred to by the size of the network number part (the bits with a "1" value). For example, an "8-bit mask" means that the first 8 bits of the mask are ones and the remaining 24 bits are zeroes.

Subnet masks are expressed in dotted decimal notation just like IP addresses. The following examples show the binary and decimal notation for 8-bit, 16-bit, 24-bit and 29-bit subnet masks.

	BINARY				
	1ST OCTET	2ND OCTET	3RD OCTET	4TH OCTET	DECIMAL
8-bit mask	11111111	00000000	00000000	00000000	255.0.0.0
16-bit mask	11111111	11111111	00000000	00000000	255.255.0.0
24-bit mask	11111111	11111111	11111111	00000000	255.255.255.0
29-bit mask	11111111	11111111	11111111	11111000	255.255.255.248

Table 75 Subnet Masks

Network Size

The size of the network number determines the maximum number of possible hosts you can have on your network. The larger the number of network number bits, the smaller the number of remaining host ID bits.

An IP address with host IDs of all zeros is the IP address of the network (192.168.1.0 with a 24-bit subnet mask, for example). An IP address with host IDs of all ones is the broadcast address for that network (192.168.1.255 with a 24-bit subnet mask, for example).

As these two IP addresses cannot be used for individual hosts, calculate the maximum number of possible hosts in a network as follows:

SUBNET MASK		HOST ID SIZE		MAXIMUM NUMBER OF HOSTS
8 bits	255.0.0.0	24 bits	2 ²⁴ – 2	16777214
16 bits	255.255.0.0	16 bits	2 ¹⁶ – 2	65534
24 bits	255.255.255.0	8 bits	2 ⁸ – 2	254
29 bits	255.255.255.248	3 bits	2 ³ – 2	6

 Table 76
 Maximum Host Numbers

Notation

Since the mask is always a continuous number of ones beginning from the left, followed by a continuous number of zeros for the remainder of the 32 bit mask, you can simply specify the number of ones instead of writing the value of each octet. This is usually specified by writing a "/" followed by the number of bits in the mask after the address.

For example, 192.1.1.0 /25 is equivalent to saying 192.1.1.0 with subnet mask 255.255.255.128.

The following table shows some possible subnet masks using both notations.

SUBNET MASK	ALTERNATIVE NOTATION	LAST OCTET (BINARY)	LAST OCTET (DECIMAL)
255.255.255.0	/24	0000 0000	0
255.255.255.128	/25	1000 0000	128
255.255.255.192	/26	1100 0000	192

 Table 77
 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation

SUBNET MASK	ALTERNATIVE NOTATION	LAST OCTET (BINARY)	LAST OCTET (DECIMAL)
255.255.255.224	/27	1110 0000	224
255.255.255.240	/28	1111 0000	240
255.255.255.248	/29	1111 1000	248
255.255.255.252	/30	1111 1100	252

 Table 77
 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation (continued)

Subnetting

You can use subnetting to divide one network into multiple sub-networks. In the following example a network administrator creates two sub-networks to isolate a group of servers from the rest of the company network for security reasons.

In this example, the company network address is 192.168.1.0. The first three octets of the address (192.168.1) are the network number, and the remaining octet is the host ID, allowing a maximum of 2^8 – 2 or 254 possible hosts.

The following figure shows the company network before subnetting.

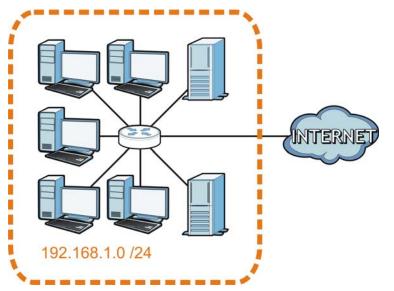


Figure 124 Subnetting Example: Before Subnetting

You can "borrow" one of the host ID bits to divide the network 192.168.1.0 into two separate subnetworks. The subnet mask is now 25 bits (255.255.255.128 or /25).

The "borrowed" host ID bit can have a value of either 0 or 1, allowing two subnets; 192.168.1.0 /25 and 192.168.1.128 /25.

The following figure shows the company network after subnetting. There are now two subnetworks, ${\bf A}$ and ${\bf B}.$

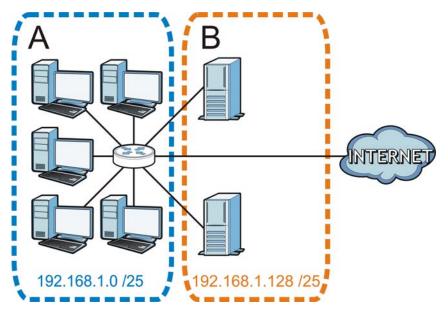


Figure 125 Subnetting Example: After Subnetting

In a 25-bit subnet the host ID has 7 bits, so each sub-network has a maximum of $2^7 - 2$ or 126 possible hosts (a host ID of all zeroes is the subnet's address itself, all ones is the subnet's broadcast address).

192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 is subnet **A** itself, and 192.168.1.127 with mask 255.255.255.128 is its broadcast address. Therefore, the lowest IP address that can be assigned to an actual host for subnet **A** is 192.168.1.1 and the highest is 192.168.1.126.

Similarly, the host ID range for subnet **B** is 192.168.1.129 to 192.168.1.254.

Example: Four Subnets

Each subnet contains 6 host ID bits, giving 2^6 - 2 or 62 hosts for each subnet (a host ID of all zeroes is the subnet itself, all ones is the subnet's broadcast address).

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address (Decimal)	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00 00000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.63	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.62	

Table 78 Subnet 1

Table	79	Subnet	2
Table	13	Jublict	~

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	64
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	01 000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.64	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.65	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126	

Table 80 Subnet 3

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	128
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	10 00000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.191	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.190	

Table 81 Subnet 4

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	192
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	11000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.192	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.193	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254	

Example: Eight Subnets

Similarly, use a 27-bit mask to create eight subnets (000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110 and 111).

The following table shows IP address last octet values for each subnet.

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
1	0	1	30	31
2	32	33	62	63
3	64	65	94	95
4	96	97	126	127
5	128	129	158	159
6	160	161	190	191

Table 82 Eight Subnets

Table 82	Eight Subnets	(continued)
----------	---------------	-------------

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
7	192	193	222	223
8	224	225	254	255

Subnet Planning

The following table is a summary for subnet planning on a network with a 24-bit network number.

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.255.128 (/25)	2	126
2	255.255.255.192 (/26)	4	62
3	255.255.255.224 (/27)	8	30
4	255.255.255.240 (/28)	16	14
5	255.255.255.248 (/29)	32	6
6	255.255.255.252 (/30)	64	2
7	255.255.255.254 (/31)	128	1

Table 83 24-bit Network Number Subnet Planning

The following table is a summary for subnet planning on a network with a 16-bit network number.

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.128.0 (/17)	2	32766
2	255.255.192.0 (/18)	4	16382
3	255.255.224.0 (/19)	8	8190
4	255.255.240.0 (/)	16	4094
5	255.255.248.0 (/21)	32	2046
6	255.255.252.0 (/22)	64	1022
7	255.255.254.0 (/23)	128	510
8	255.255.255.0 (/24)	256	254
9	255.255.255.128 (/25)	512	126
10	255.255.255.192 (/26)	1024	62
11	255.255.255.224 (/27)	2048	30
12	255.255.255.240 (/28)	4096	14
13	255.255.255.248 (/29)	8192	6
14	255.255.255.252 (/30)	16384	2
15	255.255.255.254 (/31)	32768	1

 Table 84
 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning

Configuring IP Addresses

Where you obtain your network number depends on your particular situation. If the ISP or your network administrator assigns you a block of registered IP addresses, follow their instructions in selecting the IP addresses and the subnet mask.

If the ISP did not explicitly give you an IP network number, then most likely you have a single user account and the ISP will assign you a dynamic IP address when the connection is established. If this is the case, it is recommended that you select a network number from 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.0. The Internet Assigned Number Authority (IANA) reserved this block of addresses specifically for private use; please do not use any other number unless you are told otherwise. You must also enable Network Address Translation (NAT) on the NBG5715.

Once you have decided on the network number, pick an IP address for your NBG5715 that is easy to remember (for instance, 192.168.1.1) but make sure that no other device on your network is using that IP address.

The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your NBG5715 will compute the subnet mask automatically based on the IP address that you entered. You don't need to change the subnet mask computed by the NBG5715 unless you are instructed to do otherwise.

Private IP Addresses

Every machine on the Internet must have a unique address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet (running only between two branch offices, for example) you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems. However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks:

- 10.0.0.0 10.255.255.255
- 172.16.0.0 172.31.255.255
- 192.168.0.0 192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP, or it can be assigned from a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.

Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above. For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, Address Allocation for Private Internets and RFC 1466, Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space.

IP Address Conflicts

Each device on a network must have a unique IP address. Devices with duplicate IP addresses on the same network will not be able to access the Internet or other resources. The devices may also be unreachable through the network.

Conflicting Computer IP Addresses Example

More than one device can not use the same IP address. In the following example computer **A** has a static (or fixed) IP address that is the same as the IP address that a DHCP server assigns to

computer **B** which is a DHCP client. Neither can access the Internet. This problem can be solved by assigning a different static IP address to computer **A** or setting computer **A** to obtain an IP address automatically.

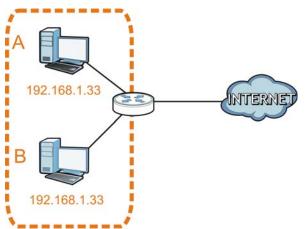
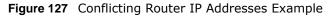
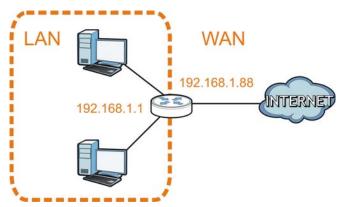


Figure 126 Conflicting Computer IP Addresses Example

Conflicting Router IP Addresses Example

Since a router connects different networks, it must have interfaces using different network numbers. For example, if a router is set between a LAN and the Internet (WAN), the router's LAN and WAN addresses must be on different subnets. In the following example, the LAN and WAN are on the same subnet. The LAN computers cannot access the Internet because the router cannot route between networks.

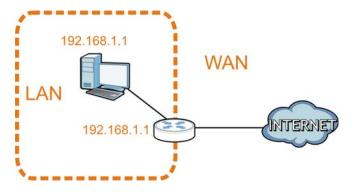




Conflicting Computer and Router IP Addresses Example

More than one device can not use the same IP address. In the following example, the computer and the router's LAN port both use 192.168.1.1 as the IP address. The computer cannot access the Internet. This problem can be solved by assigning a different IP address to the computer or the router's LAN port.

Figure 128 Conflicting Computer and Router IP Addresses Example



Setting Up Your Computer's IP Address

Note: Your specific NBG5715 may not support all of the operating systems described in this appendix. See the product specifications for more information about which operating systems are supported.

This appendix shows you how to configure the IP settings on your computer in order for it to be able to communicate with the other devices on your network. Windows Vista/XP/2000, Mac OS 9/ OS X, and all versions of UNIX/LINUX include the software components you need to use TCP/IP on your computer.

If you manually assign IP information instead of using a dynamic IP, make sure that your network's computers have IP addresses that place them in the same subnet.

In this appendix, you can set up an IP address for:

- Windows XP/NT/2000 on page 195
- Windows Vista on page 199
- Windows 7 on page 203
- Mac OS X: 10.3 and 10.4 on page 207
- Mac OS X: 10.5 and 10.6 on page 210
- Linux: Ubuntu 8 (GNOME) on page 213
- Linux: openSUSE 10.3 (KDE) on page 217

Windows XP/NT/2000

The following example uses the default Windows XP display theme but can also apply to Windows 2000 and Windows NT.

1 Click Start > Control Panel.



2 In the Control Panel, click the Network Connections icon.



3 Right-click Local Area Connection and then select Properties.



4 On the General tab, select Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) and then click Properties.

General	Authenticatio	n Advan	iced			
Connec	ct using:					
III 4	Accton EN120	7D-TX PCI	Fast Ethe	rnet Adap	oter	
					Configure.	
This co	nnection uses	the followi	ng items:			
	Client for Mic					
	File and Print		for Micros	oft Netwo	orks	
	QoS Pookot		100			
	DeS Backet Internet Prote		IP)			
V Y	-	ocol (TCP/	IP)		Properties	
	Internet Prote	ocol (TCP/		C	Properties	
Desc Tran wide	Internet Prote	ocol (TCP/ Un ol Protocol protocol th	iinstall /Internet F iat provide	s commu	The default	
Desc Tran wide acro	Internet Prote nstall ription smission Contre area network	ol Protocol th connected	install /Internet F at provide d networks	s commu	The default	

5 The Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties window opens.

ieneral	Alternate Configuration	
this cap		d automatically if your network supports eed to ask your network administrator for
💿 Ot	otain an IP address auton	natically
-OU:	se the following IP addres	SS:
IP ac	ldress:	· · · · · · · · ·
Subr	net mask:	
Defa	ult gateway:	
⊙ Oł	otain DNS server address	s automatically
OU:	se the following DNS serv	ver addresses:
Prefe	arred DNS server:	2 2 2
Alteri	nate DNS server:	
		Advanced.

6 Select Obtain an IP address automatically if your network administrator or ISP assigns your IP address dynamically.

Select Use the following IP Address and fill in the IP address, Subnet mask, and Default gateway fields if you have a static IP address that was assigned to you by your network administrator or ISP. You may also have to enter a Preferred DNS server and an Alternate DNS server, if that information was provided.

- 7 Click OK to close the Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties window.
- 8 Click OK to close the Local Area Connection Properties window.

Verifying Settings

- 1 Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt.
- 2 In the Command Prompt window, type "ipconfig" and then press [ENTER].

You can also go to **Start > Control Panel > Network Connections**, right-click a network connection, click **Status** and then click the **Support** tab to view your IP address and connection information.

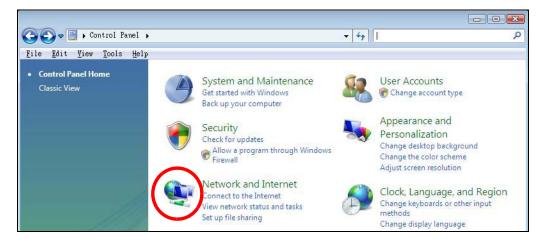
Windows Vista

This section shows screens from Windows Vista Professional.

1 Click Start > Control Panel.



2 In the Control Panel, click the Network and Internet icon.



3 Click the Network and Sharing Center icon.



4 Click Manage network connections.



5 Right-click Local Area Connection and then select Properties.

LAN or High-See	Collapse group	Left Arrow
Conne Netwo Intel	Expand all groups Collapse all groups	
	Disable Status Diagnose	
	Bridge Connections	
	Create Shortcut Delete	
	Rename Properties	

Note: During this procedure, click **Continue** whenever Windows displays a screen saying that it needs your permission to continue.

6 Select Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) and then select Properties.

Intel(R) PR0/1	000 MT Desktop Con	nection
		Configure
his connection uses	the following items:	
Client for Mic		
🗹 💂 Network Mor		
ALC: A REPORT OF A	ter Sharing for Microsc	
M A Internet Pret		
	ocol Version 6 (TCP/II	
🔨 📥 Internet Prote	ocol Version 4 (TCP/II	Pv4)
Internet Prote	ocol Version 4 (TCP/II opology Discovery Ma	Pv4) pper I/O Driver
Internet Prote	ocol Version 4 (TCP/II	Pv4) pper I/O Driver
Internet Prote Internet Prote Ink-Layer T	ocol Version 4 (TCP/II opology Discovery Ma	ev4) Ipper I/O Driver Isponder
Internet Prote	ocol Version 4 (TCP/II opology Discovery Ma	Pv4) pper I/O Driver
 ✓ Internet Prot ✓ Link-Layer T ✓ Link-Layer T 	ocol Version 4 (TCP/IF opology Discovery Ma opology Discovery Re	ev4) Ipper I/O Driver Isponder
 ✓ Internet Prote ✓ Link-Layer T ✓ Link-Layer T ✓ Install Description Transmission Contr 	opology Discovery Ma opology Discovery Re Uninstall ol Protocol/Internet Pr	apper I/O Driver sponder Properties otocol. The default
 ✓ Internet Prote ✓ Link-Layer T ✓ Link-Layer T ✓ Install Description Transmission Contr wide area network 	ocol Version 4 (TCP/II opology Discovery Ma opology Discovery Re Uninstall	apper I/O Driver sponder Properties otocol. The default

7 The Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties window opens.

You can get IP settings assigned a this capability. Otherwise, you nee for the appropriate IP settings.	utomatical ed to ask y	ly if y our r	/our n networ	etwork kadmin	supports istrator
Obtain an IP address automa	tically.				
OUse the following IP address:					
IP address:		9i	12	÷.	
Sybnet mask:		14	4	1	
Default gateway:		d.	w.		
) Obtain DNS server address a	utomatical	ly			
OUSE the following DNS server	addresses	s:			
Preferred DNS server:		0			
<u>A</u> lternate DNS server:		3	14	i.	
				adv	anced

8 Select **Obtain an IP address automatically** if your network administrator or ISP assigns your IP address dynamically.

Select Use the following IP Address and fill in the IP address, Subnet mask, and Default gateway fields if you have a static IP address that was assigned to you by your network administrator or ISP. You may also have to enter a Preferred DNS server and an Alternate DNS server, if that information was provided.Click Advanced.

- 9 Click OK to close the Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties window.
- 10 Click OK to close the Local Area Connection Properties window.

Verifying Settings

- 1 Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt.
- 2 In the **Command Prompt** window, type "ipconfig" and then press [ENTER].

You can also go to **Start > Control Panel > Network Connections**, right-click a network connection, click **Status** and then click the **Support** tab to view your IP address and connection information.

Windows 7

This section shows screens from Windows 7 Enterprise.

1 Click Start > Control Panel.



2 In the **Control Panel**, click **View network status and tasks** under the **Network and Internet** category.

I ► Control Panel ►	▼ 🐓 Search Control Panel
Adjust your computer's settings	View by: Category 🔻
System and Security Review your computer's status Back up your computer Find and fix problems	User Accounts and Family Safety Add or remove user accounts Set up parental controls for any user
Network and Internet View network status and tasks Choose homegroup and sharing options	Appearance and Personalization Change the theme Change desktop background Adjust screen resolution
Hardware and Sound View devices and printers Add a device	Clock, Language, and Region Change keyboards or other input methods Change display language
Programs Uninstall a program	Ease of Access Let Windows suggest settings Optimize visual display

3 Click Change adapter settings.

🕽 💽 🗢 😫 🕨 Control Panel	 Network and Internet Network and 	I Sharing Center		✓ ✓ Searce
Control Panel Home	View your basic network ir	nformation and se	t up connections	
Manage wireless networks	🖌 🔌 —	—] o -	🎱	See full map
Change adapter settings Change advanced sharing	TW-PC (This computer)	ZyXEL.com	Internet	
settings	View your active networks		Cor	nect or disconnect
	ZyXEL.com Work network		Access type: Internet Connections: 🏺 Local Area Co	nnection

4 Double click Local Area Connection and then select Properties.

Organize v Disable this network	device Diagnose this connectio	n Rename
Local Area Connection Unidentified network Broadcom NetXtreme Gigab	it Eth Wireless Networ ZyXEL_RT3062_ 802.11n Wireless	AP1 4
📱 Local Area Connection Status		
General		
Connection		
IPv4 Connectivity:	No network access	
IPv6 Connectivity:	No network access	
Media State:	Enabled	
Duration:	00:04:36	
Speed:	100.0 Mbps	
Details		
Activity		
Sent —	Received	
Packets: 432	0	
Properties 🚱 Disable	Diagnose	

Note: During this procedure, click **Continue** whenever Windows displays a screen saying that it needs your permission to continue.

5 Select Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) and then select Properties.

	ing		
Connect using:		107506	
Broadcom	NetXtreme Gigabit	Ethemet	
			Configure
This connection	uses the following i	tome:	oringure
	-		
and and a second s	r Microsoft Network	ks	
	cket Scheduler		297 (3
	Printer Sharing for		
	Protocol Version 6		
- Internet			
	Protocol Version 4		
🗹 🔺 Link-Lay	ver Topology Disco	very Mappe	er I/O Driver
🗹 🔺 Link-Lay		very Mappe	er I/O Driver
🗹 🔺 Link-Lay	ver Topology Disco	very Mappe	er I/O Driver
 ✓ ▲ Link-Lay ✓ ▲ Link-Lay 	ver Topology Disco ver Topology Disco	overy Mappe overy Respo	er I/O Driver nder
 ✓ ▲ Link-Lay ✓ ▲ Link-Lay Install 	ver Topology Disco	overy Mappe overy Respo	er I/O Driver
 ✓ ▲ Link-Lay ✓ ▲ Link-Lay Install Description 	ver Topology Disco ver Topology Disco Uninst	overy Mappe overy Respo	er I/O Driver nder P <u>r</u> operties
Link-Lay Lin	ver Topology Disco ver Topology Disco Uninst Control Protocol/Int	avery Mappe avery Respo tall	er I/O Driver nder P <u>r</u> operties col. The default
Link-Lay Link-Lay Install Description Transmission (wide area netw	ver Topology Disco ver Topology Disco Uninst	very Mappe very Respo tall	er I/O Driver nder P <u>r</u> operties col. The default
Link-Lay Link-Lay Install Description Transmission (wide area netw	ver Topology Disco ver Topology Disco Uninst Uninst Control Protocol/Int vork protocol that p	very Mappe very Respo tall	er I/O Driver nder P <u>r</u> operties col. The default

6 The Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties window opens.

neral	
is capability. Otherwise, you r or the appropriate IP settings.	
Obtain an IP address auto	
Use the following IP addre	
IP address:	192.168.1.7
S <u>u</u> bnet mask:	255 . 255 . 255 . 0
Default gateway:	4 4 4
Obtain DNS server address	s automatically
Use the following DNS serv	/er addresses:
Preferred DNS server:	
<u>A</u> lternate DNS server:	e a a
	t Advanced

7 Select **Obtain an IP address automatically** if your network administrator or ISP assigns your IP address dynamically.

Select Use the following IP Address and fill in the IP address, Subnet mask, and Default gateway fields if you have a static IP address that was assigned to you by your network administrator or ISP. You may also have to enter a Preferred DNS server and an Alternate DNS server, if that information was provided. Click Advanced if you want to configure advanced settings for IP, DNS and WINS.

- 8 Click OK to close the Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties window.
- 9 Click OK to close the Local Area Connection Properties window.

Verifying Settings

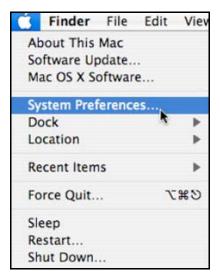
- 1 Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt.
- 2 In the Command Prompt window, type "ipconfig" and then press [ENTER].
- 3 The IP settings are displayed as follows.

C:\WINNT\system32\cmd.exe	JN
C:\>ipconfig	
Vindows 2000 IP Configuration	
Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:	
Connection-specific DNS Suffix . : P-2612HNU-F3v2	
IP Address	
Default Gateway : 192.168.1.1	
C: \>	
	-

Mac OS X: 10.3 and 10.4

The screens in this section are from Mac OS X 10.4 but can also apply to 10.3.

1 Click Apple > System Preferences.



2 In the System Preferences window, click the Network icon.



3 When the **Network** preferences pane opens, select **Built-in Ethernet** from the network connection type list, and then click **Configure**.

Show All	Network
Location	
Show	
Built-in Ethernet	Built-in Ethernet is currently active and has the IP address 10.0.1.2. You are connected to the Internet via Built-in Ethernet.
e AirPort	Internet Sharing is on and is using AirPort to share the connection.

4 For dynamically assigned settings, select **Using DHCP** from the **Configure IPv4** list in the **TCP/IP** tab.

L.	ocation: Automatic		\$	
	Show: Built-in Eth	ernet	÷	
TCP	PPPoE Apple	Talk Proxies E	thernet	
Configure IPv4:	Using DHCP			
IP Address:	0.0.0.0		Renew DHC	P Lease
Subnet Mask:		DHCP Client ID:		
Router:			(If required)	
DNS Servers:				
Search Domains:				(Optional)
IPv6 Address:				
	Configure IPv6			?

- **5** For statically assigned settings, do the following:
 - From the Configure IPv4 list, select Manually.
 - In the **IP Address** field, type your IP address.
 - In the **Subnet Mask** field, type your subnet mask.
 - In the **Router** field, type the IP address of your device.

Show: Built-in Ethernet	\$	
IP PPPoE AppleTalk Prox	xies Ethernet	
Manually	•	
0.0.0.0		
0.0.0.0		
		1
		(Optiona
Configure IPv6		(
		(
	PPPoE AppleTalk Proz Manually 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0	Show: Built-in Ethernet

6 Click Apply Now and close the window.

Verifying Settings

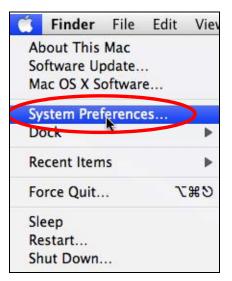
Check your TCP/IP properties by clicking **Applications** > **Utilities** > **Network Utilities**, and then selecting the appropriate **Network Interface** from the **Info** tab.

O O Netv	Network Utility				
Info Netstat AppleTalk Ping Lool	kup Traceroute Whois Finger Port Sca				
lease select a network interface for informa	tion				
Network Interface (en0)					
Interface information	Transfer Statistics				
Hardware Address 00:16:cb:8b:50:2e	Sent Packets 20607				
IP Address(es) 118.169.44.203	Send Errors 0				
Link Speed 100 Mb	Recv Packets 22626				
Link Status Active	Recv Errors 0				
Vendor Marvell	Collisions 0				
Model Yukon Gigabit Adapte 88E8053	er				

Mac OS X: 10.5 and 10.6

The screens in this section are from Mac OS X 10.5 but can also apply to 10.6.

1 Click Apple > System Preferences.



2 In System Preferences, click the Network icon.

		System F	Preferences			
how All					Q	
S		H	100		Q	
Desktop & Screen Saver	Dock	Exposé & Spaces	International	Security	Spotlight	
	\bigcirc	*				
Displays	Energy Saver	Keyboard & Mouse	Print & Fax	Sound		
Network						
Network	QuickTime	Sharing				
\smile						
Date & Time	Parental Controls	Software Update	Speech	Startup Disk	(O) Time Machine	Universal Access
	Desktop & Screen Saver	Desktop & Dock Screen Saver Displays Penergy Saver Network QuickTime	how All Desktop & Screen Saver Dock Exposé & Spaces Displays Vertroits Network QuickTime Oute & Time Parental	Desktop & Screen Saver Dock Exposé & Spaces International International Displays Print & Saver Print & Sharing Print & Spaces Network QuickTime Spaces Spaces Displays Print & Saver Spaces Print & Spaces	Image: how All Image: how All Desktop & Screen Saver Dock Exposé & International Security Displays Print & Fax Sound Displays Print & Fax Sound	how All Image: Constraint of the second

3 When the **Network** preferences pane opens, select **Ethernet** from the list of available connection types.

	Locati	on: Automatic		•
Internal Modem Not Connected PPPoE Not Connected	Contraction of the second	Status:	Not Connected The cable for Etherne your computer does r	t is connected, but not have an IP address.
Ethernet Not Connected	<···>	Configure:	Using DHCP	\$
FireWire Not Connected	*			
AirPort	(10			
		DNS Server:		
		Search Domains:		
		802.1X:	WPA: ZyXEL04	Connect
				(Advanced)

4 From the **Configure** list, select **Using DHCP** for dynamically assigned settings.

- **5** For statically assigned settings, do the following:
 - From the Configure list, select Manually.
 - In the IP Address field, enter your IP address.
 - In the **Subnet Mask** field, enter your subnet mask.
 - In the **Router** field, enter the IP address of your NBG5715.

	Location:	Automatic		\$	
Internal Modem Not Connected PPPoE Not Connected	 <!--</td--><td>Status:</td><td>Not Connected The cable for Etherne your computer does r</td><td>t is connected, but tot have an IP address.</td><td></td>	Status:	Not Connected The cable for Etherne your computer does r	t is connected, but tot have an IP address.	
Ethernet Not Connected	~~>	Configure:	Manually	\$	
FireWire Not Connected AirPort Off	** ©	IP Address: Subnet Mask: Router: DNS Server: Search Domains: 802.1X:	0.0.0.0	Connect Advanced	(?

6 Click **Apply** and close the window.

Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties by clicking **Applications > Utilities > Network Utilities**, and then selecting the appropriate **Network interface** from the **Info** tab.

O Network L	tility			
nfo Netstat AppleTalk Ping Lookup	Traceroute	Whois	Finger	Port Scan
ease select a network interface for information				
Network Interface (en1)	Transford	Chatlanian		
Interface information	Transfer		125.55	
Hardware Address: 00:30:65:25:6a:b3	Sent Packets: 1230			
IP Address(es): 10.0.2.2	Send Er	Send Errors: 0		
Link Speed: 11 Mbit/s	Recv Pac	kets: 119	7	
Link Status: Active	Recv Er	rors: 0		
Vendor: Apple	Collis	Collisions: 0		
Model: Wireless Network Adapter				

Figure 130 Mac OS X 10.5: Network Utility

Linux: Ubuntu 8 (GNOME)

This section shows you how to configure your computer's TCP/IP settings in the GNU Object Model Environment (GNOME) using the Ubuntu 8 Linux distribution. The procedure, screens and file locations may vary depending on your specific distribution, release version, and individual configuration. The following screens use the default Ubuntu 8 installation.

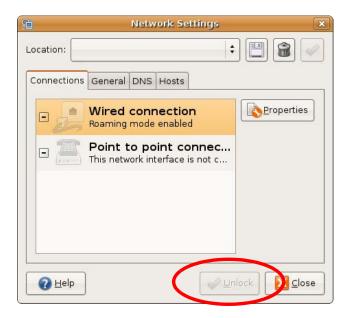
Note: Make sure you are logged in as the root administrator.

Follow the steps below to configure your computer IP address in GNOME:

1 Click System > Administration > Network.



2 When the **Network Settings** window opens, click **Unlock** to open the **Authenticate** window. (By default, the **Unlock** button is greyed out until clicked.) You cannot make changes to your configuration unless you first enter your admin password.



3 In the **Authenticate** window, enter your admin account name and password then click the **Authenticate** button.

٩	Authenticate
S	System policy prevents modifying the configuration
	An application is attempting to perform an action that requires privileges. Authentication as one of the users below is required to perform this action.
	🕒 C.J.,,,, (chris)
	Password for chris:
þ <u>D</u> eta	ils
	Cancel <u>Authenticate</u>

4 In the **Network Settings** window, select the connection that you want to configure, then click **Properties**.

1	Network Settings	×
Location:	\$	1
Connections	General DNS Hosts	
•	Wired connection Roaming mode enabled	Properties
•	Point to point connec This network interface is not c	
🕜 <u>H</u> elp		lock

5 The **Properties** dialog box opens.

e e	th0 Properties 🛛 🗙
Enable roaming mo	
Connection Setting	5
Con <u>fi</u> guration:	
<u>I</u> P address:	
<u>S</u> ubnet mask:	
<u>G</u> ateway address:	
	Cancel

- In the Configuration list, select Automatic Configuration (DHCP) if you have a dynamic IP address.
- In the **Configuration** list, select **Static IP address** if you have a static IP address. Fill in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Gateway address** fields.
- 6 Click OK to save the changes and close the **Properties** dialog box and return to the **Network Settings** screen.
- 7 If you know your DNS server IP address(es), click the **DNS** tab in the **Network Settings** window and then enter the DNS server information in the fields provided.

6	Network Settings	×
Location:		: 🖪 😭 🧹
Connections	General DNS Hosts	
DNS Serv	ers	
10.0.2.3		음 <u>A</u> dd
		Delete
Search D	omains	
		Delete
🕜 <u>H</u> elp		unlock

8 Click the **Close** button to apply the changes.

Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties by clicking **System > Administration > Network Tools**, and then selecting the appropriate **Network device** from the **Devices** tab. The **Interface Statistics** column shows data if your connection is working properly.

Devices Ping Netstat Traceroute Port Scan Lookup Finger Whois Network device: Ethernet Ethernet Interface (eth0) <	ool Edit			Devices	- Network	c Tools		1	
Network device: Ethernet Interface (eth0) Image: Configure IP Information Protocol IP Address Netmask / Prefix Broadcast Scope IPv4 10.0.2.15 255.255.255.0 10.0.2.255 10.0.2.255 IPv6 fe80:::a00:27ff:fe30:e16c 64 Link Interface Information Interface Statistics Received bytes: 684.6 KiB Multicast: Enabled Transmitted bytes: 684.6 KiB MTU: 1500 Transmission errors: 0 Link speed: not available Received packets: 1426 State: Active Received packets: 1426 Reception errors: 0 Collisions: 0		<u>H</u> e	lp						
IP Information Protocol IP Address Netmask / Prefix Broadcast Scope IPv4 10.0.2.15 255.255.255.0 10.0.2.255 IPv6 fe80::a00:27ff:fe30:e16c 64 Link Interface Information Interface Statistics 684.6 KiB Multicast: Enabled Transmitted bytes: 684.6 KiB MTU: 1500 Transmission errors: 0 Link speed: not available Received bytes: 219.5 KiB State: Active Received packets: 1426 Reception errors: 0 Collisions: 0	evices	Ping	Netstat	Traceroute	Port Scan	Lookup	Finger Who	pis	
Protocol IP Address Netmask / Prefix Broadcast Scope IPv4 10.0.2.15 255.255.255.0 10.0.2.255 IPv6 fe80:::a00:27ff:fe30:e16c 64 Link Interface Information Hardware address: 08:00:27:30:e1:6c Iransmitted bytes: 684.6 KiB Multicast: Enabled Transmitted packets: 1425 MTU: 1500 Transmission errors: 0 Link speed: not available Received packets: 1426 State: Active Received packets: 1426 Reception errors: 0 Collisions: 0	_		L	📑 Eth	ernet Interfa	ace (eth0)	• <u>0</u> 2%	nfigure
IPv4 10.0.2.15 255.255.0 10.0.2.255 IPv6 fe80:::a00:27ff:fe30:e16c 64 Link Interface Information Interface Statistics 684.6 KiB Hardware address: 08:00:27:30:e1:6c Iransmitted bytes: 684.6 KiB Multicast: Enabled Transmitted packets: 1425 MTU: 1500 Transmission errors: 0 Link speed: not available Received bytes: 219.5 KiB State: Active Received packets: 1426 Reception errors: 0 Collisions: 0				6	Netmas	k / Prefix	Broadcast	Scope	
IPv6 fe80:::a00:27ff:fe30:e16c 64 Link Interface Information Interface Statistics iranomitted bytes: 684.6 KiB Hardware address: 08:00:27:30:e1:6c Iranomitted bytes: 684.6 KiB Multicast: Enabled Transmitted bytes: 684.6 KiB MTU: 1500 Transmission errors: 0 Link speed: not available Received bytes: 219.5 KiB State: Active Received packets: 1426 Reception errors: 0 Collisions: 0	_					11			
Interface Information Interface Statistics Hardware address: 08:00:27:30:e1:6c Iransmitted bytes: 684.6 KiB Multicast: Enabled Transmitted packets: 1425 MTU: 1500 Transmission errors: 0 Link speed: not available Received bytes: 219.5 KiB State: Active Received packets: 1426 Reception errors: 0 Collisions: 0						125510	1010121205		
Hardware address: 08:00:27:30:e1:6cIransmitted bytes:684.6 KiBMulticast:EnabledTransmitted packets:1425MTU:1500Transmission errors:0Link speed:not availableReceived bytes:219.5 KiBState:ActiveReceived packets:1426Reception errors:0Collisions:0									
Multicast: Enabled Transmitted packets: 1425 MTU: 1500 Transmission errors: 0 Link speed: not available Received bytes: 219.5 KiB State: Active Received packets: 1426 Reception errors: 0 Collisions: 0									
MTU: 1500 Transmission errors: 0 Link speed: not available Received bytes: 219.5 KiB State: Active Received packets: 1426 Reception errors: 0 Collisions: 0		20232002						684.6 KiB	
State: Active Received packets: 1426 Reception errors: 0 Collisions: 0	Hardw	/are a	ddress: (08:00:27:30:	el:6c n	ansmitte	ed bytes:		
Reception errors: 0 Collisions: 0	Hardw Multica	/are a	ddress: (08:00:27:30: Enabled	el:6c T	r ansmitte ransmitte	ed bytes: ed packets:	1425	
Collisions: 0	Hardw Multica MTU:	/are a ast:	iddress: (08:00:27:30: Enabled 1500	el:6с п Т П	ransmitte ransmitte ransmiss	ed bytes: ed packets: ion errors:	1425 0	
	Hardw Multica MTU: Link sp	vare a ast: peed:	iddress: (08:00:27:30: Enabled 1500 not available	el:6c דו דו דו פ R	ransmitte ransmitte ransmiss Received l	ed bytes: ed packets: ion errors: bytes:	1425 0 219.5 KiB	
	Hardw Multica MTU: Link sp	vare a ast: peed:	iddress: (08:00:27:30: Enabled 1500 not available	el:6c T T R R	ransmitte ransmitte ransmiss Received I Received I	ed bytes: ed packets: ion errors: bytes: packets:	1425 0 219.5 KiB 1426	
	Hardw Multica MTU: Link sp	vare a ast: peed:	iddress: (08:00:27:30: Enabled 1500 not available	el:6c Ti Ti e R R R	ransmitte ransmitte ransmiss Received I Received I Reception	ed bytes: ed packets: ion errors: bytes: packets: errors:	1425 0 219.5 KiB 1426 0	

Figure 131 Ubuntu 8: Network Tools

Linux: openSUSE 10.3 (KDE)

This section shows you how to configure your computer's TCP/IP settings in the K Desktop Environment (KDE) using the openSUSE 10.3 Linux distribution. The procedure, screens and file locations may vary depending on your specific distribution, release version, and individual configuration. The following screens use the default openSUSE 10.3 installation.

Note: Make sure you are logged in as the root administrator.

Follow the steps below to configure your computer IP address in the KDE:

1 Click K Menu > Computer > Administrator Settings (YaST).



2 When the **Run as Root - KDE su** dialog opens, enter the admin password and click **OK**.

💥 Run as r	oot - KDE su 🎱 🛛 📪 🗙	
R	Please enter the Administrator (root) password to continue.	
Command:	/sbin/yast2	
<u>P</u> assword:	••••	
	Ignore 🔽 <u>O</u> K 🗶 <u>C</u> ancel	

3 When the YaST Control Center window opens, select Network Devices and then click the Network Card icon.

🥘 YaST Control Center @ lin	ux-h2oz 🅘		
<u>Eile E</u> dit <u>H</u> elp			
Software	DSL	isdn	
Hardware			
System	🚰 Modem	Network Card	
Network Devices			
Network Services			
Movell AppArmor			
🙊 Security and Users			
💥 Miscellaneous			
Search	n		
			1

4 When the **Network Settings** window opens, click the **Overview** tab, select the appropriate connection **Name** from the list, and then click the **Configure** button.

🕵 YaST2@linux-h2oz 🧐							
Network Card Overview	Network	Setting	IS				
Obtain an overview of installed network cards. Additionally, edit their	Global Options	Overview	(ne/DNS	Routing]
configuration.	AMD PCnet - Fas	and the second second	IP Address				
Adding a Network Card: Press Add to configure a new network card manually. Configuring or Deleting: Choose a network card to change or remove. Then press Configure or Delete as desired.							
		:96:ed:3d ame: eth-et utomatical	- th0	2			
	Back			Abo <u>r</u> t			Einish

5 When the Network Card Setup window opens, click the Address tab

Address Setup 🔄	Network Car	d Setup	
Select No Address Setup if you do not want any IP address for this device. This is particularly useful for bonding ethernet devices.		Hardware Infiguration Name No Bonding Devices)	
Select Dynamic address if you do not nave a static IP	 Dynamic Address Statically assigned 	DHCP -	
address assigned by the system administrator or your cable or DSL provider.	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Hostname
You can choose one of the dynamic address assignment method. Select DHCP if you have a DHCP server running on your local hetwork. Network addresses are then obtained automatically from the server.	Alias Name IP A	ddress Netmask	
o automatically earch for free IP and nen assign it tatically, select			Dejete.

Figure 132	openSUSE	10.3:	Network	Card	Setup
------------	----------	-------	---------	------	-------

6 Select **Dynamic Address (DHCP)** if you have a dynamic IP address.

Select **Statically assigned IP Address** if you have a static IP address. Fill in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Hostname** fields.

- 7 Click Next to save the changes and close the Network Card Setup window.
- 8 If you know your DNS server IP address(es), click the Hostname/DNS tab in Network Settings and then enter the DNS server information in the fields provided.

Enter the name for this computer and the	風 Network Settings	
DNS domain that it belongs to.	Global Options Overview Hostna	me/DNS Routing
Optionally enter the name server list and	Hostname and Domain Name	<u>D</u> omain Name
domain search list.	linux-h2oz	site
Note that the hostname is globalit applies to all	<u>C</u> hange Hostname via DHCP <u>W</u> rite Hostname to /etc/hosts	
interfaces, not just this one.	■ Change /etc/resolv.conf manually Name Servers and Domain Search Lis	
The domain is especially important if	Name Server <u>1</u>	Do <u>m</u> ain Search
this computer is a mail	10.0.2.3	
server.	Name Server 2	
If you are using DHCP to get an IP address, check whether to get a hostname via DHCP.	Name Server <u>3</u>	
The hostname of your host (which can be seen by issuing the	Update DNS data via DHCP	
hostname command) will be set automatically by the DHCP client. You may want to disable this option if you connect to different networks		

9 Click **Finish** to save your settings and close the window.

Verifying Settings

Click the **KNetwork Manager** icon on the **Task bar** to check your TCP/IP properties. From the **Options** sub-menu, select **Show Connection Information**.

Figure 133 openSUSE 10.3: KNetwork Manager

🕅 Enable Wireless		
🗊 Disable Wireless	🥪 KNetworkManager	
Y Switch to Online Mode	Wired Devices	
😡 Switch to Offline Mode	🗙 Wired Network	
T Show Connection Information	🔜 Dial-Up Connections	•
🔦 Configure	🍓 Options	
	🕜 <u>H</u> elp	•
	0 Quit	Ctrl+Q

When the **Connection Status - KNetwork Manager** window opens, click the **Statistics tab** to see if your connection is working properly.

<u>D</u> evice	💊 <u>A</u> ddresse	tatistics
	Received	Transmitted
Bytes	2317441	841875
MBytes	2.2	0.8
Packets	3621	3140
Errors	0	0
Dropped	0	0
KBytes/s	0.0	0.0

Figure 134 openSUSE: Connection Status - KNetwork Manager

Wireless LANs

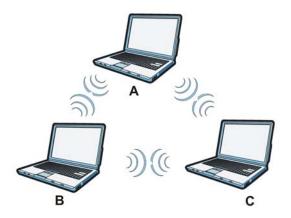
Wireless LAN Topologies

This section discusses ad-hoc and infrastructure wireless LAN topologies.

Ad-hoc Wireless LAN Configuration

The simplest WLAN configuration is an independent (Ad-hoc) WLAN that connects a set of computers with wireless adapters (A, B, C). Any time two or more wireless adapters are within range of each other, they can set up an independent network, which is commonly referred to as an ad-hoc network or Independent Basic Service Set (IBSS). The following diagram shows an example of notebook computers using wireless adapters to form an ad-hoc wireless LAN.

Figure 135 Peer-to-Peer Communication in an Ad-hoc Network

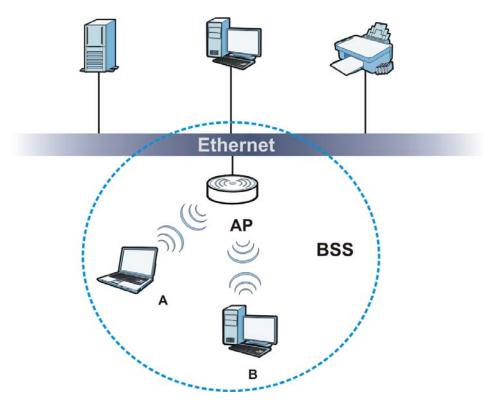


BSS

A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless clients or between a wireless client and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).

Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless clients in the BSS. When Intra-BSS is enabled, wireless client **A** and **B** can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS is disabled, wireless client **A** and **B** can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.





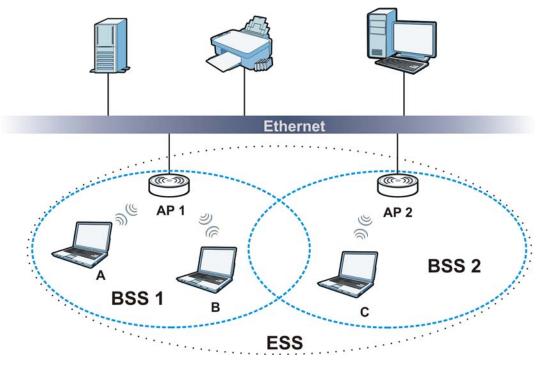
ESS

An Extended Service Set (ESS) consists of a series of overlapping BSSs, each containing an access point, with each access point connected together by a wired network. This wired connection between APs is called a Distribution System (DS).

This type of wireless LAN topology is called an Infrastructure WLAN. The Access Points not only provide communication with the wired network but also mediate wireless network traffic in the immediate neighborhood.

An ESSID (ESS IDentification) uniquely identifies each ESS. All access points and their associated wireless clients within the same ESS must have the same ESSID in order to communicate.





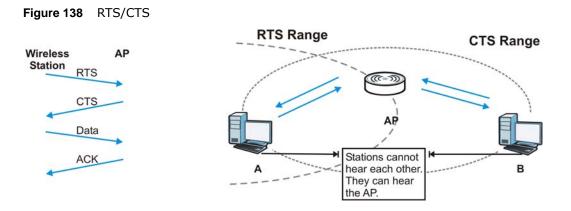
Channel

A channel is the radio frequency(ies) used by wireless devices to transmit and receive data. Channels available depend on your geographical area. You may have a choice of channels (for your region) so you should use a channel different from an adjacent AP (access point) to reduce interference. Interference occurs when radio signals from different access points overlap causing interference and degrading performance.

Adjacent channels partially overlap however. To avoid interference due to overlap, your AP should be on a channel at least five channels away from a channel that an adjacent AP is using. For example, if your region has 11 channels and an adjacent AP is using channel 1, then you need to select a channel between 6 or 11.

RTS/CTS

A hidden node occurs when two stations are within range of the same access point, but are not within range of each other. The following figure illustrates a hidden node. Both stations (STA) are within range of the access point (AP) or wireless gateway, but out-of-range of each other, so they cannot "hear" each other, that is they do not know if the channel is currently being used. Therefore, they are considered hidden from each other.



When station **A** sends data to the AP, it might not know that the station **B** is already using the channel. If these two stations send data at the same time, collisions may occur when both sets of data arrive at the AP at the same time, resulting in a loss of messages for both stations.

RTS/CTS is designed to prevent collisions due to hidden nodes. An **RTS/CTS** defines the biggest size data frame you can send before an RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake is invoked.

When a data frame exceeds the **RTS/CTS** value you set (between 0 to 2432 bytes), the station that wants to transmit this frame must first send an RTS (Request To Send) message to the AP for permission to send it. The AP then responds with a CTS (Clear to Send) message to all other stations within its range to notify them to defer their transmission. It also reserves and confirms with the requesting station the time frame for the requested transmission.

Stations can send frames smaller than the specified **RTS/CTS** directly to the AP without the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

You should only configure **RTS/CTS** if the possibility of hidden nodes exists on your network and the "cost" of resending large frames is more than the extra network overhead involved in the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

If the **RTS/CTS** value is greater than the **Fragmentation Threshold** value (see next), then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach **RTS/CTS** size.

Note: Enabling the RTS Threshold causes redundant network overhead that could negatively affect the throughput performance instead of providing a remedy.

Fragmentation Threshold

A **Fragmentation Threshold** is the maximum data fragment size (between 256 and 2432 bytes) that can be sent in the wireless network before the AP will fragment the packet into smaller data frames.

A large **Fragmentation Threshold** is recommended for networks not prone to interference while you should set a smaller threshold for busy networks or networks that are prone to interference.

If the **Fragmentation Threshold** value is smaller than the **RTS/CTS** value (see previously) you set then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach **RTS/CTS** size.

Preamble Type

Preamble is used to signal that data is coming to the receiver. Short and long refer to the length of the synchronization field in a packet.

Short preamble increases performance as less time sending preamble means more time for sending data. All IEEE 802.11 compliant wireless adapters support long preamble, but not all support short preamble.

Use long preamble if you are unsure what preamble mode other wireless devices on the network support, and to provide more reliable communications in busy wireless networks.

Use short preamble if you are sure all wireless devices on the network support it, and to provide more efficient communications.

Use the dynamic setting to automatically use short preamble when all wireless devices on the network support it, otherwise the NBG5715 uses long preamble.

Note: The wireless devices MUST use the same preamble mode in order to communicate.

IEEE 802.11g Wireless LAN

IEEE 802.11g is fully compatible with the IEEE 802.11b standard. This means an IEEE 802.11b adapter can interface directly with an IEEE 802.11g access point (and vice versa) at 11 Mbps or lower depending on range. IEEE 802.11g has several intermediate rate steps between the maximum and minimum data rates. The IEEE 802.11g data rate and modulation are as follows:

DATA RATE (MBPS)	MODULATION
1	DBPSK (Differential Binary Phase Shift Keyed)
2	DQPSK (Differential Quadrature Phase Shift Keying)
5.5 / 11	CCK (Complementary Code Keying)
6/9/12/18/24/36/48/ 54	OFDM (Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing)

Table 85 IEEE 802.11g

Wireless Security Overview

Wireless security is vital to your network to protect wireless communication between wireless clients, access points and the wired network.

Wireless security methods available on the NBG5715 are data encryption, wireless client authentication, restricting access by device MAC address and hiding the NBG5715 identity.

The following figure shows the relative effectiveness of these wireless security methods available on your NBG5715.

SECURITY LEVEL	SECURITY TYPE
Least	Unique SSID (Default)
Secure	Unique SSID with Hide SSID Enabled
	MAC Address Filtering
	WEP Encryption
	IEEE802.1x EAP with RADIUS Server Authentication
	Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)
	WPA2
Most Secure	

Table 86 Wireless Security Levels

Note: You must enable the same wireless security settings on the NBG5715 and on all wireless clients that you want to associate with it.

IEEE 802.1x

In June 2001, the IEEE 802.1x standard was designed to extend the features of IEEE 802.11 to support extended authentication as well as providing additional accounting and control features. It is supported by Windows XP and a number of network devices. Some advantages of IEEE 802.1x are:

- User based identification that allows for roaming.
- Support for RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) for centralized user profile and accounting management on a network RADIUS server.
- Support for EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol, RFC 2486) that allows additional authentication methods to be deployed with no changes to the access point or the wireless clients.

RADIUS

RADIUS is based on a client-server model that supports authentication, authorization and accounting. The access point is the client and the server is the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server handles the following tasks:

• Authentication

Determines the identity of the users.

Authorization

Determines the network services available to authenticated users once they are connected to the network.

• Accounting

Keeps track of the client's network activity.

RADIUS is a simple package exchange in which your AP acts as a message relay between the wireless client and the network RADIUS server.

Types of RADIUS Messages

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user authentication:

Access-Request

Sent by an access point requesting authentication.

Access-Reject

Sent by a RADIUS server rejecting access.

• Access-Accept

Sent by a RADIUS server allowing access.

Access-Challenge

Sent by a RADIUS server requesting more information in order to allow access. The access point sends a proper response from the user and then sends another Access-Request message.

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user accounting:

Accounting-Request

Sent by the access point requesting accounting.

Accounting-Response

Sent by the RADIUS server to indicate that it has started or stopped accounting.

In order to ensure network security, the access point and the RADIUS server use a shared secret key, which is a password, they both know. The key is not sent over the network. In addition to the shared key, password information exchanged is also encrypted to protect the network from unauthorized access.

Types of EAP Authentication

This section discusses some popular authentication types: EAP-MD5, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, PEAP and LEAP. Your wireless LAN device may not support all authentication types.

EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is an authentication protocol that runs on top of the IEEE 802.1x transport mechanism in order to support multiple types of user authentication. By using EAP to interact with an EAP-compatible RADIUS server, an access point helps a wireless station and a RADIUS server perform authentication.

The type of authentication you use depends on the RADIUS server and an intermediary AP(s) that supports IEEE 802.1x.

For EAP-TLS authentication type, you must first have a wired connection to the network and obtain the certificate(s) from a certificate authority (CA). A certificate (also called digital IDs) can be used to authenticate users and a CA issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner.

EAP-MD5 (Message-Digest Algorithm 5)

MD5 authentication is the simplest one-way authentication method. The authentication server sends a challenge to the wireless client. The wireless client 'proves' that it knows the password by encrypting the password with the challenge and sends back the information. Password is not sent in plain text.

However, MD5 authentication has some weaknesses. Since the authentication server needs to get the plaintext passwords, the passwords must be stored. Thus someone other than the authentication server may access the password file. In addition, it is possible to impersonate an authentication server as MD5 authentication method does not perform mutual authentication. Finally, MD5 authentication method does not support data encryption with dynamic session key. You must configure WEP encryption keys for data encryption.

EAP-TLS (Transport Layer Security)

With EAP-TLS, digital certifications are needed by both the server and the wireless clients for mutual authentication. The server presents a certificate to the client. After validating the identity of the server, the client sends a different certificate to the server. The exchange of certificates is done in the open before a secured tunnel is created. This makes user identity vulnerable to passive attacks. A digital certificate is an electronic ID card that authenticates the sender's identity. However, to implement EAP-TLS, you need a Certificate Authority (CA) to handle certificates, which imposes a management overhead.

EAP-TTLS (Tunneled Transport Layer Service)

EAP-TTLS is an extension of the EAP-TLS authentication that uses certificates for only the serverside authentications to establish a secure connection. Client authentication is then done by sending username and password through the secure connection, thus client identity is protected. For client authentication, EAP-TTLS supports EAP methods and legacy authentication methods such as PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP and MS-CHAP v2.

PEAP (Protected EAP)

Like EAP-TTLS, server-side certificate authentication is used to establish a secure connection, then use simple username and password methods through the secured connection to authenticate the clients, thus hiding client identity. However, PEAP only supports EAP methods, such as EAP-MD5, EAP-MSCHAPv2 and EAP-GTC (EAP-Generic Token Card), for client authentication. EAP-GTC is implemented only by Cisco.

LEAP

LEAP (Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol) is a Cisco implementation of IEEE 802.1x.

Dynamic WEP Key Exchange

The AP maps a unique key that is generated with the RADIUS server. This key expires when the wireless connection times out, disconnects or reauthentication times out. A new WEP key is generated each time reauthentication is performed.

If this feature is enabled, it is not necessary to configure a default encryption key in the wireless security configuration screen. You may still configure and store keys, but they will not be used while dynamic WEP is enabled.

Note: EAP-MD5 cannot be used with Dynamic WEP Key Exchange

For added security, certificate-based authentications (EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS and PEAP) use dynamic keys for data encryption. They are often deployed in corporate environments, but for public deployment, a simple user name and password pair is more practical. The following table is a comparison of the features of authentication types.

	EAP-MD5	EAP-TLS	EAP-TTLS	PEAP	LEAP	
Mutual Authentication	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Certificate – Client	No	Yes	Optional	Optional	No	
Certificate – Server	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	
Dynamic Key Exchange	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Credential Integrity	None	Strong	Strong	Strong	Moderate	
Deployment Difficulty	Easy	Hard	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate	
Client Identity Protection	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	

 Table 87
 Comparison of EAP Authentication Types

WPA and WPA2

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a subset of the IEEE 802.11i standard. WPA2 (IEEE 802.11i) is a wireless security standard that defines stronger encryption, authentication and key management than WPA.

Key differences between WPA or WPA2 and WEP are improved data encryption and user authentication.

If both an AP and the wireless clients support WPA2 and you have an external RADIUS server, use WPA2 for stronger data encryption. If you don't have an external RADIUS server, you should use WPA2-PSK (WPA2-Pre-Shared Key) that only requires a single (identical) password entered into each access point, wireless gateway and wireless client. As long as the passwords match, a wireless client will be granted access to a WLAN.

If the AP or the wireless clients do not support WPA2, just use WPA or WPA-PSK depending on whether you have an external RADIUS server or not.

Select WEP only when the AP and/or wireless clients do not support WPA or WPA2. WEP is less secure than WPA or WPA2.

Encryption

WPA improves data encryption by using Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), Message Integrity Check (MIC) and IEEE 802.1x. WPA2 also uses TKIP when required for compatibility reasons, but offers stronger encryption than TKIP with Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) in the Counter mode with Cipher block chaining Message authentication code Protocol (CCMP).

TKIP uses 128-bit keys that are dynamically generated and distributed by the authentication server. AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) is a block cipher that uses a 256-bit mathematical algorithm

called Rijndael. They both include a per-packet key mixing function, a Message Integrity Check (MIC) named Michael, an extended initialization vector (IV) with sequencing rules, and a re-keying mechanism.

WPA and WPA2 regularly change and rotate the encryption keys so that the same encryption key is never used twice.

The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the PMK to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients. This all happens in the background automatically.

The Message Integrity Check (MIC) is designed to prevent an attacker from capturing data packets, altering them and resending them. The MIC provides a strong mathematical function in which the receiver and the transmitter each compute and then compare the MIC. If they do not match, it is assumed that the data has been tampered with and the packet is dropped.

By generating unique data encryption keys for every data packet and by creating an integrity checking mechanism (MIC), with TKIP and AES it is more difficult to decrypt data on a Wi-Fi network than WEP and difficult for an intruder to break into the network.

The encryption mechanisms used for WPA(2) and WPA(2)-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA(2)-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. The common-password approach makes WPA(2)-PSK susceptible to brute-force password-guessing attacks but it's still an improvement over WEP as it employs a consistent, single, alphanumeric password to derive a PMK which is used to generate unique temporal encryption keys. This prevent all wireless devices sharing the same encryption keys. (a weakness of WEP)

User Authentication

WPA and WPA2 apply IEEE 802.1x and Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) to authenticate wireless clients using an external RADIUS database. WPA2 reduces the number of key exchange messages from six to four (CCMP 4-way handshake) and shortens the time required to connect to a network. Other WPA2 authentication features that are different from WPA include key caching and pre-authentication. These two features are optional and may not be supported in all wireless devices.

Key caching allows a wireless client to store the PMK it derived through a successful authentication with an AP. The wireless client uses the PMK when it tries to connect to the same AP and does not need to go with the authentication process again.

Pre-authentication enables fast roaming by allowing the wireless client (already connecting to an AP) to perform IEEE 802.1x authentication with another AP before connecting to it.

Wireless Client WPA Supplicants

A wireless client supplicant is the software that runs on an operating system instructing the wireless client how to use WPA. At the time of writing, the most widely available supplicant is the WPA patch for Windows XP, Funk Software's Odyssey client.

The Windows XP patch is a free download that adds WPA capability to Windows XP's built-in "Zero Configuration" wireless client. However, you must run Windows XP to use it.

WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

To set up WPA(2), you need the IP address of the RADIUS server, its port number (default is 1812), and the RADIUS shared secret. A WPA(2) application example with an external RADIUS server looks as follows. "A" is the RADIUS server. "DS" is the distribution system.

- 1 The AP passes the wireless client's authentication request to the RADIUS server.
- 2 The RADIUS server then checks the user's identification against its database and grants or denies network access accordingly.
- **3** A 256-bit Pairwise Master Key (PMK) is derived from the authentication process by the RADIUS server and the client.
- 4 The RADIUS server distributes the PMK to the AP. The AP then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the PMK to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys. The keys are used to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients.

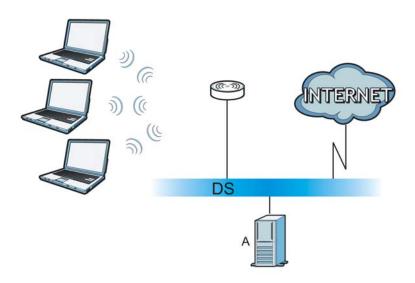


Figure 139 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

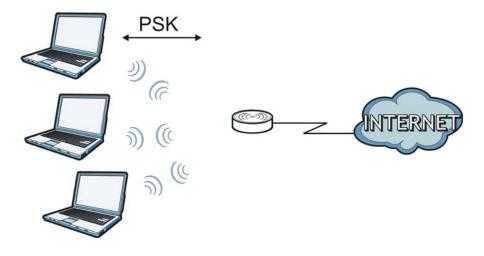
WPA(2)-PSK Application Example

A WPA(2)-PSK application looks as follows.

- 1 First enter identical passwords into the AP and all wireless clients. The Pre-Shared Key (PSK) must consist of between 8 and 63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal characters (including spaces and symbols).
- 2 The AP checks each wireless client's password and allows it to join the network only if the password matches.
- **3** The AP and wireless clients generate a common PMK (Pairwise Master Key). The key itself is not sent over the network, but is derived from the PSK and the SSID.

4 The AP and wireless clients use the TKIP or AES encryption process, the PMK and information exchanged in a handshake to create temporal encryption keys. They use these keys to encrypt data exchanged between them.

Figure 140 WPA(2)-PSK Authentication



Security Parameters Summary

Refer to this table to see what other security parameters you should configure for each authentication method or key management protocol type. MAC address filters are not dependent on how you configure these security features.

AUTHENTICATION METHOD/ KEY MANAGEMENT PROTOCOL	ENCRYPTIO N METHOD	ENTER MANUAL KEY	IEEE 802.1X
Open	None	No	Disable
			Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
Open	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
	Yes		Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Disable
Shared	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Disable
WPA	TKIP/AES	No	Enable
WPA-PSK	TKIP/AES	Yes	Disable
WPA2	TKIP/AES	No	Enable
WPA2-PSK	TKIP/AES	Yes	Disable

 Table 88
 Wireless Security Relational Matrix

Antenna Overview

An antenna couples RF signals onto air. A transmitter within a wireless device sends an RF signal to the antenna, which propagates the signal through the air. The antenna also operates in reverse by capturing RF signals from the air.

Positioning the antennas properly increases the range and coverage area of a wireless LAN.

Antenna Characteristics

Frequency

An antenna in the frequency of 2.4GHz (IEEE 802.11b and IEEE 802.11g) or 5GHz (IEEE 802.11a) is needed to communicate efficiently in a wireless LAN

Radiation Pattern

A radiation pattern is a diagram that allows you to visualize the shape of the antenna's coverage area.

Antenna Gain

Antenna gain, measured in dB (decibel), is the increase in coverage within the RF beam width. Higher antenna gain improves the range of the signal for better communications.

For an indoor site, each 1 dB increase in antenna gain results in a range increase of approximately 2.5%. For an unobstructed outdoor site, each 1dB increase in gain results in a range increase of approximately 5%. Actual results may vary depending on the network environment.

Antenna gain is sometimes specified in dBi, which is how much the antenna increases the signal power compared to using an isotropic antenna. An isotropic antenna is a theoretical perfect antenna that sends out radio signals equally well in all directions. dBi represents the true gain that the antenna provides.

Types of Antennas for WLAN

There are two types of antennas used for wireless LAN applications.

- Omni-directional antennas send the RF signal out in all directions on a horizontal plane. The coverage area is torus-shaped (like a donut) which makes these antennas ideal for a room environment. With a wide coverage area, it is possible to make circular overlapping coverage areas with multiple access points.
- Directional antennas concentrate the RF signal in a beam, like a flashlight does with the light from its bulb. The angle of the beam determines the width of the coverage pattern. Angles typically range from degrees (very directional) to 120 degrees (less directional). Directional antennas are ideal for hallways and outdoor point-to-point applications.

Positioning Antennas

In general, antennas should be mounted as high as practically possible and free of obstructions. In point-to-point application, position both antennas at the same height and in a direct line of sight to each other to attain the best performance.

For omni-directional antennas mounted on a table, desk, and so on, point the antenna up. For omni-directional antennas mounted on a wall or ceiling, point the antenna down. For a single AP application, place omni-directional antennas as close to the center of the coverage area as possible.

For directional antennas, point the antenna in the direction of the desired coverage area.

Common Services

The following table lists some commonly-used services and their associated protocols and port numbers. For a comprehensive list of port numbers, ICMP type/code numbers and services, visit the IANA (Internet Assigned Number Authority) web site.

- Name: This is a short, descriptive name for the service. You can use this one or create a different one, if you like.
- **Protocol**: This is the type of IP protocol used by the service. If this is **TCP/UDP**, then the service uses the same port number with TCP and UDP. If this is **USER-DEFINED**, the **Port(s)** is the IP protocol number, not the port number.
- **Port(s)**: This value depends on the **Protocol**. Please refer to RFC 1700 for further information about port numbers.
 - If the Protocol is TCP, UDP, or TCP/UDP, this is the IP port number.
 - If the Protocol is USER, this is the IP protocol number.
- **Description**: This is a brief explanation of the applications that use this service or the situations in which this service is used.

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION	
AH (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	51	The IPSEC AH (Authentication Header) tunneling protocol uses this service.	
AIM/New-ICQ	ТСР	5190	AOL's Internet Messenger service. It is also used as a listening port by ICQ.	
AUTH	ТСР	113	Authentication protocol used by some servers.	
BGP	ТСР	179	Border Gateway Protocol.	
BOOTP_CLIENT	UDP	68	DHCP Client.	
BOOTP_SERVER	UDP	67	DHCP Server.	
CU-SEEME	ТСР	7648	A popular videoconferencing solution from	
	UDP	24032	White Pines Software.	
DNS	TCP/UDP	53	Domain Name Server, a service that matches web names (for example <u>www.zyxel.com</u>) to IP numbers.	
ESP (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	50	The IPSEC ESP (Encapsulation Security Protocol) tunneling protocol uses this service.	
FINGER	ТСР	79	Finger is a UNIX or Internet related command that can be used to find out if a user is logged on.	
FTP	ТСР ТСР	21	File Transfer Program, a program to enable fast transfer of files, including large files that may not be possible by e-mail.	
H.323	ТСР	1720	NetMeeting uses this protocol.	

 Table 89
 Commonly Used Services

 Table 89
 Commonly Used Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION	
НТТР	ТСР	80	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol - a client/ server protocol for the world wide web.	
HTTPS	ТСР	443	HTTPS is a secured http session often used in e-commerce.	
ICMP	User-Defined	1	Internet Control Message Protocol is often used for diagnostic or routing purposes.	
ICQ	UDP	4000	This is a popular Internet chat program.	
IGMP (MULTICAST)	User-Defined	2	Internet Group Management Protocol is used when sending packets to a specific group of hosts.	
IKE	UDP	500	The Internet Key Exchange algorithm is used for key distribution and management.	
IRC	TCP/UDP	6667	This is another popular Internet chat program.	
MSN Messenger	ТСР	1863	Microsoft Networks' messenger service uses this protocol.	
NEW-ICQ	ТСР	5190	An Internet chat program.	
NEWS	ТСР	144	A protocol for news groups.	
NFS	UDP	2049	Network File System - NFS is a client/ server distributed file service that provides transparent file sharing for network environments.	
NNTP	ТСР	119	Network News Transport Protocol is the delivery mechanism for the USENET newsgroup service.	
PING	User-Defined	1	Packet INternet Groper is a protocol that sends out ICMP echo requests to test whether or not a remote host is reachable.	
POP3	ТСР	110	Post Office Protocol version 3 lets a client computer get e-mail from a POP3 server through a temporary connection (TCP/IP or other).	
РРТР	ТСР	1723	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the control channel.	
PPTP_TUNNEL (GRE)	User-Defined	47	PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the data channel.	
RCMD	ТСР	512	Remote Command Service.	
REAL_AUDIO	ТСР	7070	A streaming audio service that enables real time sound over the web.	
REXEC	ТСР	514	Remote Execution Daemon.	
RLOGIN	ТСР	513	Remote Login.	
RTELNET	ТСР	107	Remote Telnet.	
RTSP	TCP/UDP	554	The Real Time Streaming (media control) Protocol (RTSP) is a remote control for multimedia on the Internet.	
SFTP	ТСР	115	Simple File Transfer Protocol.	

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION	
SMTP	ТСР	25	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is the message-exchange standard for the Internet. SMTP enables you to move messages from one e-mail server to another.	
SNMP	TCP/UDP	161	Simple Network Management Program.	
SNMP-TRAPS	TCP/UDP	162	Traps for use with the SNMP (RFC:1215).	
SQL-NET	ТСР	1521	Structured Query Language is an interface to access data on many different types of database systems, including mainframes, midrange systems, UNIX systems and network servers.	
SSH	TCP/UDP	22	Secure Shell Remote Login Program.	
STRM WORKS	UDP	1558	Stream Works Protocol.	
SYSLOG	UDP	514	Syslog allows you to send system logs to a UNIX server.	
TACACS	UDP	49	Login Host Protocol used for (Terminal Access Controller Access Controller).	
TELNET	ТСР	23	Telnet is the login and terminal emulation protocol common on the Internet and in UNIX environments. It operates over TCP IP networks. Its primary function is to allow users to log into remote host systems.	
TFTP	UDP	69	Trivial File Transfer Protocol is an Internet file transfer protocol similar to FTP, but uses the UDP (User Datagram Protocol) rather than TCP (Transmission Control Protocol).	
VDOLIVE	ТСР	7000	Another videoconferencing solution.	

 Table 89
 Commonly Used Services (continued)

Legal Information

Copyright

Copyright © 2012 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Trademarks

NetUSB is a trademark of ZyXEL Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

Certifications

4

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

The device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

• This device may not cause harmful interference.

This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

This device has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy, and if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this device does cause harmful interference to radio/television reception, which can be determined by turning the device off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- 1 Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- 2 Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- 3 Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
 - Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC Caution: Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.



FCC Radiation Exposure Statement

- This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
- IEEE 802.11b, 802.11g or 802.11n (20MHz) operation of this product in the U.S.A. is firmware-limited to channels 1 through 11. IEEE 802.11n (40MHz) operation of this product in the U.S.A. is firmware-limited to channels 3 through 9.
- To comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirements, a separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between the antenna of this device and all persons.

IMPORTANT NOTE

Device for the band 5150-5250 MHz is only for indoor usage to reduce potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems; users should also be cautioned to take note that high-power radars are allocated as primary users (meaning they have priority) of the bands 5250-5350 MHz and 5650-5850 MHz and these radars could cause interference and/or damage to LE-LAN devices.

IC Radiation Exposure Statement

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. End users must follow the specific operating instructions for satisfying RF exposure compliance.

注意!

依據 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司、商號或使用 者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信;經發現

有干擾現象時,應立即停用,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信,指依電信規定作業之無線電信。低功率射頻電機須忍 受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

在 5.25-5.35 秭赫 (GHz) 頻帶內操作之無線資訊傳輸設備,限於室內使用。

Notices

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device is designed for the WLAN 2.4 GHz and/or 5 GHz networks throughout the EC region and Switzerland, with restrictions in France.

Ce produit est conçu pour les bandes de fréquences 2,4 GHz et/ou 5 GHz conformément à la législation Européenne. En France métropolitaine, suivant les décisions n°03-908 et 03-909 de l'ARCEP, la puissance d'émission ne devra pas dépasser 10 mW (10 dB) dans le cadre d'une installation WiFi en extérieur pour les fréquences comprises entre 2454 MHz et 2483,5 MHz.

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Viewing Certifications

Go to http://www.zyxel.com to view this product's documentation and certifications.

ZyXEL Limited Warranty

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in material or workmanship for a specific period (the Warranty Period) from the date of purchase. The Warranty Period varies by region. Check with your vendor and/or the authorized ZyXEL local distributor for details about the Warranty Period of this product. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact your vendor. You may also refer to the warranty policy for the region in which you bought the device at http://www.zyxel.com/web/support_warranty_info.php.

Registration

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at www.zyxel.com for global products, or at www.us.zyxel.com for North American products.

Open Source Licenses

This product contains in part some free software distributed under GPL license terms and/or GPL like licenses. Open source licenses are provided with the firmware package. You can download the latest firmware at www.zyxel.com. To obtain the source code covered under those Licenses, please contact support@zyxel.com.tw to get it.

Regulatory Information

European Union

The following information applies if you use the product within the European Union.

Declaration of Conformity with Regard to EU Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Compliance Information for 2.4GHz and 5GHz Wireless Products Relevant to the EU and Other Countries Following the EU Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

[Czech]	ZyXEL tímto prohlašuje, že tento zařízení je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/EC.	
[Danish]	Undertegnede ZyXEL erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr udstyr overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.	
[German]	Hiermit erklärt ZyXEL, dass sich das Gerät Ausstattung in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EU befindet.	
[Estonian] Käesolevaga kinnitab ZyXEL seadme seadmed vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud dire tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.		
English Hereby, ZyXEL declares that this equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other re provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.		
[Spanish]	Por medio de la presente ZyXEL declara que el equipo cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.	
[Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ ΖΥΧΕΙ ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ εξοπλισμός ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕC.	

[French]	Par la présente ZyXEL déclare que l'appareil équipements est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/EC.
[Italian]	Con la presente ZyXEL dichiara che questo attrezzatura è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
[Latvian]	Ar šo ZyXEL deklarē, ka iekārtas atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
[Lithuanian]	Šiuo ZyXEL deklaruoja, kad šis įranga atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
[Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart ZyXEL dat het toestel uitrusting in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EC.
[Maltese]	Hawnhekk, ZyXEL, jiddikjara li dan taghmir jikkonforma mal-htiģijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti ohrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
[Hungarian]	Alulírott, ZyXEL nyilatkozom, hogy a berendezés megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EK irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
[Polish]	Niniejszym ZyXEL oświadcza, że sprzęt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
[Portuguese]	ZyXEL declara que este equipamento está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/EC.
[Slovenian]	ZyXEL izjavlja, da je ta oprema v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/EC.
[Slovak]	ZyXEL týmto vyhlasuje, že zariadenia spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/EC.
[Finnish]	ZyXEL vakuuttaa täten että laitteet tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
[Swedish]	Härmed intygar ZyXEL att denna utrustning står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EC.
[Bulgarian]	С настоящото ZyXEL декларира, че това оборудване е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредбите на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
[Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir, ZyXEL því yfir að þessi búnaður er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og önnur viðeigandi ákvæði tilskipunar 1999/5/EC.
[Norwegian]	Erklærer herved ZyXEL at dette utstyret er I samsvar med de grunnleggende kravene og andre relevante bestemmelser I direktiv 1999/5/EF.
[Romanian]	Prin prezenta, ZyXEL declară că acest echipament este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale și alte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 1999/5/EC.

€€

National Restrictions

This product may be used in all EU countries (and other countries following the EU directive 1999/5/EC) without any limitation except for the countries mentioned below:

Ce produit peut être utilisé dans tous les pays de l'UE (et dans tous les pays ayant transposés la directive 1999/5/CE) sans aucune limitation, excepté pour les pays mentionnés ci-dessous:

Questo prodotto è utilizzabile in tutte i paesi EU (ed in tutti gli altri paesi che seguono le direttive EU 1999/5/EC) senza nessuna limitazione, eccetto per i paesii menzionati di seguito:

Das Produkt kann in allen EU Staaten ohne Einschränkungen eingesetzt werden (sowie in anderen Staaten die der EU Direktive 1995/5/CE folgen) mit Außnahme der folgenden aufgeführten Staaten:

In the majority of the EU and other European countries, the 2, 4- and 5-GHz bands have been made available for the use of wireless local area networks (LANs). Later in this document you will find an overview of countries inwhich additional restrictions or requirements or both are applicable.

The requirements for any country may evolve. ZyXEL recommends that you check with the local authorities for the latest status of their national regulations for both the 2,4- and 5-GHz wireless LANs.

The following countries have restrictions and/or requirements in addition to those given in the table labeled "Overview of Regulatory Requirements for Wireless LANs":.

Overview of Regulatory Requirements for Wireless LANs			
Frequency Band (MHz)	Max Power Level (EIRP) $\frac{1}{2}$ (mW)	Indoor ONLY	Indoor and Outdoor
2400-2483.5	100		V
5150-5350	200	V	
5470-5725	1000		V

Belgium

The Belgian Institute for Postal Services and Telecommunications (BIPT) must be notified of any outdoor wireless link having a range exceeding 300 meters. Please check http://www.bipt.be for more details.

Draadloze verbindingen voor buitengebruik en met een reikwijdte van meer dan 300 meter dienen aangemeld te worden bij het Belgisch Instituut voor postdiensten en telecommunicatie (BIPT). Zie http://www.bipt.be voor meer gegevens.

Les liaisons sans fil pour une utilisation en extérieur d'une distance supérieure à 300 mètres doivent être notifiées à l'Institut Belge des services Postaux et des Télécommunications (IBPT). Visitez http://www.ibpt.be pour de plus amples détails.

Denmark

In Denmark, the band 5150 - 5350 MHz is also allowed for outdoor usage.

I Danmark må frekvensbåndet 5150 - 5350 også anvendes udendørs.

France

For 2.4 GHz, the output power is restricted to 10 mW EIRP when the product is used outdoors in the band 2454 - 2483.5 MHz. There are no restrictions when used indoors or in other parts of the 2.4 GHz band. Check http://www.arcep.fr/ for more details.

Pour la bande 2.4 GHz, la puissance est limitée à 10 mW en p.i.r.e. pour les équipements utilisés en extérieur dans la bande 2454 - 2483.5 MHz. Il n'y a pas de restrictions pour des utilisations en intérieur ou dans d'autres parties de la bande 2.4 GHz. Consultez http://www.arcep.fr/ pour de plus amples détails.

 R&TTE 1999/5/EC

 WLAN 2.4 - 2.4835 GHz

 IEEE 802.11 b/g/n

 Location
 Frequency Range (GHz)

 Power (EIRP)

 Indoor (No restrictions)
 2.4 - 2.4835

 Outdoor
 2.4 - 2.454

 2.454 - 2.4835
 100mW (20dBm)

Italy

This product meets the National Radio Interface and the requirements specified in the National Frequency Allocation Table for Italy. Unless this wireless LAN product is operating within the boundaries of the owner's property, its use requires a "general authorization." Please check http://www.sviluppoeconomico.gov.it/ for more details.

Questo prodotto è conforme alla specifiche di Interfaccia Radio Nazionali e rispetta il Piano Nazionale di ripartizione delle frequenze in Italia. Se non viene installato all 'interno del proprio fondo, l'utilizzo di prodotti Wireless LAN richiede una "Autorizzazione Generale". Consultare http://www.sviluppoeconomico.gov.it/ per maggiori dettagli.

Latvia

The outdoor usage of the 2.4 GHz band requires an authorization from the Electronic Communications Office. Please check http://www.esd.lv for more details.

2.4 GHz frekvenèu joslas izmantoðanai årpus telpâm nepiecieðama atïauja no Elektronisko sakaru direkcijas. Vairâk informâcijas: http://www.esd.lv. Notes:

1. Although Norway, Switzerland and Liechtenstein are not EU member states, the EU Directive 1999/5/EC has also been implemented in those countries.

2. The regulatory limits for maximum output power are specified in EIRP. The EIRP level (in dBm) of a device can be calculated by adding the gain of the antenna used(specified in dBi) to the output power available at the connector (specified in dBm).

List of national codes

COUNTRY	ISO 3166 2 LETTER CODE	COUNTRY	ISO 3166 2 LETTER CODE
Austria	AT	Malta	MT
Belgium	BE	Netherlands	NL
Cyprus	CY	Poland	PL
Czech Republic	CR	Portugal	PT
Denmark	DK	Slovakia	SK
Estonia	EE	Slovenia	SI
Finland	FI	Spain	ES
France	FR	Sweden	SE
Germany	DE	United Kingdom	GB
Greece	GR	Iceland	IS
Hungary	HU	Liechtenstein	LI
Ireland	IE	Norway	NO
Italy	IT	Switzerland	СН
Latvia	LV	Bulgaria	BG
Lithuania	LT	Romania	RO
Luxembourg	LU	Turkey	TR

Safety Warnings

- Do NOT use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids. Do NOT store things on the device.
- Do NOT install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning. Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- Do NOT open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. ONLY qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device. Please contact your vendor for further information.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports. Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Use ONLY an appropriate power adaptor or cord for your device.
- Connect the power adaptor or cord to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe). Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.

- Do NOT use the device if the power adaptor or cord is damaged as it might cause electrocution. If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, remove it from the power outlet. Do NOT attempt to repair the power adaptor or cord. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Do not use the device outside, and make sure all the connections are indoors. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do NOT obstruct the device ventilation slots, as insufficient airflow may harm your device. Antenna Warning! This device meets ETSI and FCC certification requirements when using the included antenna(s). Only use the included antenna(s).
- If you wall mount your device, make sure that no electrical lines, gas or water pipes will be damaged.
- This product is for indoor use only (utilisation intérieure exclusivement).

Your product is marked with this symbol, which is known as the WEEE mark. WEEE stands for Waste Electronics and Electrical Equipment. It means that used electrical and electronic products should not be mixed with general waste. Used electrical and electronic equipment should be treated separately.



Index

A

Address Assignment 68 Advanced Encryption Standard See AES. AES 231 AH 136 algorithms 136 alternative subnet mask notation 187 antenna directional 235 gain 235 omni-directional 235 AP (access point) 225

В

Bandwidth management overview 143 priority 144 Basic Service Set, See BSS 223 bridged APs, security 78 BSS 223

С

CA 230 Certificate Authority See CA. certifications 241 notices 242 viewing 242 channel 76, 225 interference 225 Configuration restore 164 copyright 241 CPU usage 53 CTS (Clear to Send) 226

D

Daylight saving 162 **DDNS 109** see also Dynamic DNS service providers 109 DH 141 DHCP 34, 95 DHCP server see also Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol DHCP server 92, 95 DHCP table 34 DHCP client information DHCP status Diffie-Hellman key groups 141 disclaimer 241 DNS 97 DNS Server 68 DNS server 97 documentation related 2 Domain Name System 97 Domain Name System. See DNS. duplex setting 54 Dynamic DNS 109 Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol 95 dynamic WEP key exchange 230 DynDNS 109 DynDNS see also DDNS 109

Ε

EAP Authentication 229 encapsulation 136 encryption 77, 231 and local (user) database 78 key 78 WPA compatible 78 ESP 136 ESS 224 ESSID 171 Extended Service Set, See ESS 224

F

FCC interference statement 241 Firewall 116 Firewall overview guidelines 116 ICMP packets 117 network security Stateful inspection 116 ZyXEL device firewall 116 firewall stateful inspection 115 Firmware upload 162 file extension using HTTP firmware version 53 fragmentation threshold 226

G

General wireless LAN screen 79

Η

hidden node 225

I

IANA **192** IBSS **223** ID type and content **140** IEEE 802.11g **227** IGMP 69 see also Internet Group Multicast Protocol version IGMP version 69 IKE phases 137 IKE SA aggressive mode 122 IP address, remote IPSec router 123 IP address, ZyXEL Device 122 main mode 122 negotiation mode 122 IKE SA. See also VPN. Independent Basic Service Set See IBSS 223 initialization vector (IV) 232 inside header 137 Internet Assigned Numbers Authority See IANA 192 Internet Group Multicast Protocol 69 Internet Key Exchange 137 Internet Protocol Security. See IPSec. IP Address 93, 102 IP Pool 96 IPSec 121 algorithms 136 architecture 136 NAT 139 IPSec SA authentication key (manual keys) 131 encryption key (manual keys) 131 local policy 123 manual keys 131 remote policy 123 when IKE SA is disconnected 123 IPSec SA. See also VPN. IPSec. See also VPN.

L

LAN 91 IP pool setup 92 LAN overview 91 LAN setup 91 LAN TCP/IP 92 Link type 53 local (user) database 77 and encryption 78 Local Area Network 91

Μ

MAC 85 MAC address 68, 76 cloning 68 MAC address filter 76 MAC address filtering 85 MAC filter 85 managing the device good habits 16 using the web configurator. See web configurator. using the WPS. See WPS. Media access control 85 Memory usage 53 Message Integrity Check (MIC) 231 Multicast 69 IGMP 69

Ν

NAT 99, 102, 192 global 100 how it works 101 inside 100 IPSec 139 local 100 outside 100 overview 99 port forwarding 106 see also Network Address Translation server 100 server sets 106 traversal 139 NAT Traversal 153 Navigation Panel 54 navigation panel 54 negotiation mode 138 Network Address Translation 99, 102

0

other documentation 2 outside header 137

Ρ

Pairwise Master Key (PMK) 232, 233 Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet 71 Pool Size 96 Port forwarding 102, 106 default server 102, 106 example 106 local server 102 port numbers services port speed 54 PPPoE 71 dial-up connection preamble mode 227 pre-shared key 141 product registration 242 PSK 232

Q

Quality of Service (QoS) 87

R

RADIUS 228 message types 229 messages 229 shared secret key 229 RADIUS server 77 registration product 242 related documentation 2 Remote management and NAT 149 limitations 149 system timeout 150 Reset button 31 Reset the device 31 Restore configuration 164 Roaming 86 Router Mode status screen 51 RTS (Request To Send) 226 threshold 225, 226 RTS/CTS Threshold 76, 86

S

Scheduling 89 security associations. See VPN. Security Parameter Index 130 Service and port numbers 119, 147 Service Set 48.79 Service Set IDentification 48, 79 Service Set IDentity. See SSID. SPI 130 SSID 48, 53, 76, 79 stateful inspection firewall 115 Static DHCP 96 Static Route 111 Status 51 subnet 185 Subnet Mask 93 subnet mask 186 subnetting 188 Summary DHCP table 34 Packet statistics 35 Wireless station status 37 System General Setup 159

Т

TCP/IP configuration Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) Time setting trademarks transport mode trigger port 107 Trigger port forwarding 107 example 107 process 107 tunnel mode 137

U

Universal Plug and Play 153 Application 153 Security issues 153 UPnP 153 user authentication 77 local (user) database 77 RADIUS server 77 User Name 110

V

Virtual Private Network. See VPN. VPN 121 established in two phases 122 IKE SA. See IKE SA. IPSec 121 IPSec SA. See IPSec SA. local network 121 remote IPSec router 121 remote network 121 security associations (SA) 122 VPN. See also IKE SA, IPSec SA.

W

WAN (Wide Area Network) 67
WAN MAC address 68
warranty 242
 note 242
Web Configurator
 how to access 29
 Overview 29
web configurator 16
WEP Encryption 82, 83

WEP encryption 81 WEP key 81 Wi-Fi Protected Access 231 Wireless association list 37 wireless channel 171 wireless client WPA supplicants 232 wireless LAN 171 wireless LAN scheduling 89 Wireless network basic guidelines 76 channel 76 encryption 77 example 75 MAC address filter 76 overview 75 security 76 SSID 76 Wireless security 76 overview 76 type 76 wireless security 171, 227 Wireless tutorial 57 WLAN interference 225 security parameters 234 WPA 231 key caching 232 pre-authentication 232 user authentication 232 vs WPA-PSK 232 wireless client supplicant 232 with RADIUS application example 233 WPA compatible 78 WPA2 231 user authentication 232 vs WPA2-PSK 232 wireless client supplicant 232 with RADIUS application example 233 WPA2-Pre-Shared Key 231 WPA2-PSK 231, 232 application example 233 WPA-PSK 231, 232 application example 233 WPS 16